REAL WORLD

ADOBE® InDesign® CS6

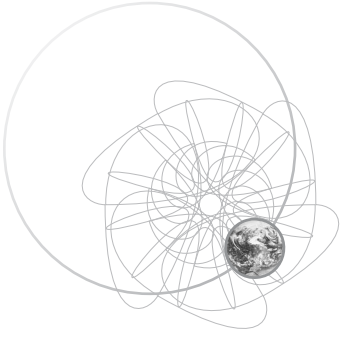
INDUSTRIAL-STRENGTH PUBLISHING TECHNIQUES

What designers and production artists need to know

Tips and tricks for maximum efficiency

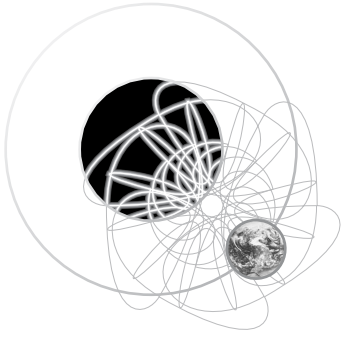
For print and web / mobile devices

OLAV MARTIN KVERN, DAVID BLATNER, AND BOB BRINGHURST



REAL WORLD ADOBE INDESIGN CS6

This page intentionally left blank



Real World Adobe InDesign CS6

by

Olav Martin Kvern
&
David Blatner
&
Bob Bringhurst

Adobe

Peachpit Press

for Amy and Max
&
Gabriel and Daniel
&
Wendy, Luke, and Max

REAL WORLD ADOBE INDESIGN CS6
Olav Martin Kvern, David Blatner, and Bob Bringhurst

Copyright © 2012 by Olav Kvern, David Blatner, and Bob Bringhurst

PEACHPIT
1249 Eighth Street
Berkeley, California 94710
(510) 524-2178
(510) 524-2221 (fax)

Find us on the web at: www.peachpit.com
To report errors, please send a note to errata@peachpit.com
Peachpit Press is a division of Pearson Education

Project Editor: Susan Rimerman
Production Editor: Lisa Brazieal
Indexer: Jan C. Wright
Interior Design/Composition: Olav Martin Kvern, David Blatner, and Bob Bringhurst
Cover Design: Charlene Charles-Will
Cover Illustration: John Weber

NOTICE OF RIGHTS
All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher. For information on getting permission for reprints and excerpts, contact: permissions@peachpit.com.

NOTICE OF LIABILITY
The information in this book is distributed on an "As Is" basis, without warranty. While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of the book, neither the authors nor Peachpit shall have any liability to any person or entity with respect to any loss or damage caused or alleged to be caused directly or indirectly by the instructions contained in this book or by the computer software and hardware products described in it.

TRADEMARKS
Adobe and InDesign are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

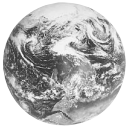
Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this book, and Peachpit was aware of a trademark claim, the designations appear as requested by the owner of the trademark. All other product names and services identified throughout this book are used in editorial fashion only and for the benefit of such companies with no intention of infringement of the trademark. No such use, or the use of any trade name, is intended to convey endorsement or other affiliation with this book..

ISBN-13: 978-0-321-83461-4

ISBN-10: 0-321-83461-5

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Printed and bound in the United States of America



Contents

How This Book Was Produced xi
Bonus Materials xi
Acknowledgments xii

CHAPTER 1 **Workspace** 1
Layout and Story Windows 2
Managing Multiple Windows 7
InDesign's Panels 9
Using the Tools Panel 17
Other Panels 27
Context Menus 29
Keyboard Shortcuts 29
Customizing Menus 32
Customizing the Control Panel 34
Saving and Loading Workspaces 34
Setting Preferences 35
Setting Defaults 62
Publication Navigation 62
Managing InDesign's Plug-Ins 67
Place Icons 68
On with the Tour 68

CHAPTER 2 **Importing and Exporting** 69
Creating a New Publication 70
Opening Publications 73
Saving Publications 75
Crash Recovery 77
Setting Basic Layout Options 77
Pages and Spreads 79
Adding Pages 82
Arranging Pages 84
Creating pages of different sizes 87
Rotating Spreads 89
Defining Sections 90

Numbering Pages 92
Adding Section Marker Text 93
Working with Master Pages 94
Applying Master Pages and Master Spreads 97
Overriding Master Items 102
Adjusting Layouts 103
Liquid Page Rules 106
Alternate Layouts 110
Selecting and Deselecting 115
Guides 119
Grids 130
Stacking Objects 131
Layers 133
Grouping Objects 142
Locking Object Positions 143
Deleting Objects 144
Finding and Changing Objects 144
A Good Foundation 146

CHAPTER 3 **Text** 147
Creating Text Frames 148
Setting Text Frame Options 150
Spanning and Splitting Columns 157
Linking and Unlinking Text Frames 159
Flowing Text 164
Entering Text 168
Text Variables 175
Cross References 191
Importing Text 194
Text Files and File Linking 203
Exporting Text 203
Editing Text 203
Story Editor 206
Track Changes 209
Notes 210
Using Adobe InCopy 212
Checking Spelling 213
Footnotes 218
Conditional Text 223
Find and Change 226
Working with InDesign Tagged Text 244
After Words 248

CHAPTER 4 **Type** 249
Character Formatting 251
OpenType Fonts 270
Find Font 275
Filling and Stroking Characters 276
Paragraph Formatting 276
Bullets and Numbering 306
Styles 315
Copying Styles from Other Publications 331
Optical Margin Alignment 333
An Old Typesetter Never 334

CHAPTER 5 **Drawing** 335
Drawing Basic Shapes 336
Points and Paths 337
Drawing Paths with the Pencil Tool 340
Drawing Paths with the Pen Tool 340
Drawing Techniques 342
Compound Paths 347
Smoothing Paths 349
Erasing Paths 350
Path Operations 350
Corner Options 354
Strokes 355
Stroke Styles 362
Fills 366
Gradients 367
Transparency 372
Transparency Effects 378
Drawing Conclusions 388

CHAPTER 6 **Where Text Meets Graphics** 389
Paragraph Rules 390
Tables 395
Creating a Table 396
Editing Tables 399
Table Shortcuts 412
Formatting Tables 413
Table and Cell Styles 423
Text Wrap 428
Converting Text to Outlines 432
Inline Frames and Anchored Objects 434

Object Styles 449
Placing Text on a Path 454
Quick Apply 460
Figure Captions 463
Alternate Reality 466

CHAPTER 7 **Importing and Exporting** 467
Importing 468
Placing Anything 469
About Graphic File Formats 472
Image Resolution and Scaling 475
Graphic Display Properties 476
Image Import Options 478
Linking and Embedding 484
Copying and Linking Objects 493
Working with Graphic Frames 498
File Info and Metadata 503
Object Layer Options 505
Working with Clipping Paths 507
Applying Color to an Imported Graphic 510
Exporting Documents 511
Exporting JPEG or PNG 511
Exporting EPS 513
Exporting PDF for Printing 515
InDesign Markup Language (IDML) 532
Snippets 532
Data Merge 533
XML 540
The Best of All Possible Worlds 544

CHAPTER 8 **Long Documents** 545
Books 546
Table of Contents 555
Indexes (Or Indices) 561
Putting It Together 574

CHAPTER 9 **Transforming** 575
Transformation Basics 576
Numbers Are Your Friends 579
Moving Objects 583
Scaling 586
Rotating Objects 588

Reflecting Objects 591
Shearing Objects 592
Repeating Transformations 593
Grid Mode 596
Aligning and Distributing Objects 597
Locking Objects 601
Hiding Objects 602
Transform Your Life! 602

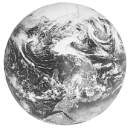
CHAPTER 10 **Color** 603
Seeing Color, Printing Color 604
Color in InDesign 604
InDesign's Color Controls 606
The Color Panel and the Color Picker 620
Applying Colors and Gradients 622
Kuler 623
Ink Manager 625
Trapping 626
Color Management 627
InDesign's Color Management Controls 630
The Color "Done" 644

CHAPTER 11 **Printing** 645
The InDesign Print Dialog Box 646
General 648
Setup 652
Marks and Bleeds 655
Output 657
Graphics 662
Color Management 666
Advanced 666
Summary 668
Print Presets 668
Custom Printer Marks 670
Printing Booklets 671
Separations Preview 675
Printing Transparency 677
Preparing an InDesign File for Imagesetting 686
Preflight and Package 687
All the News That Prints to Fit 692

CHAPTER 12 **Scripting** 693
Be Not Afraid. 694
System Requirements 694
Learning About InDesign Scripting 697
Thinking About Scripting 700
Using the Scripts Panel and the Script Label Panel 701
Getting Started. 703
More Fun with Scripting 706
End Script. 708

CHAPTER 13 **Digital Publishing** 709
Hyperlinks 711
Bookmarks 718
Buttons and Forms 719
Multi-State Objects 727
Audio and Video 729
Animation 733
Page Transitions. 739
Previewing Interactive Documents 740
Presentation Mode 740
Interactive PDF Export. 741
SWF Export 743
FLA Export 745
EPUB Export 745
Exporting HTML 755
Digital Publishing Suite 760
Web Publishing 766

INTRODUCTION



We're publishers—just like you. We've been through the long shifts, entering and editing text, setting type, importing images, and trying to get files to print. On most of those late nights and early mornings, we could have been home in bed if we had known just one key piece of information. But we weren't. There was no one there to tell us.

We're here to tell you.

If some piece of information in this book saves you one late night, we will have succeeded in our purpose.

How This Book Was Produced

To answer the question we've been asked so many times: Yes, we produced this book in Adobe InDesign. We created art using Snapz Pro, SnagIt, Photoshop, Illustrator, and InDesign's tools.

We used Adobe's Minion Pro family for our body text—a workhorse typeface that manages to look both modern and classical at the same time. For code, we used TheSansMonoCondensed, by Lucas de Groot (from lucasfonts.com).

Bonus Materials

If we included everything we wanted—obscure features, charming anecdotes, and so on—this book would be over 2,000 pages.

We cut a lot of information out of this book to keep the size down. Bonus materials include XML workflow information (an entire chapter), scripting resources, and more. To access this material on the web, you will need to register your book. Go to this link:

www.peachpit.com/realworldindesigncs6

After you've registered, click "Access to protected content" next to the book title in your registered products list.

Acknowledgments

Thanks to Adobe's InDesign team and all the other folks at or formerly *at* Adobe who helped support this book—including Michael Ninness, Lynly Schambers-Lenox, Whitney McCleary, Chad Siegel, Bur Davis, Angie Hammond, Matt Phillips, Tommy Donovan, Douglas Waterfall, Eric Menninga, Kiyo Toma, Chris Kitchener, David Stephens, Jonathan Brown, Alan Stearns, Dov Isaacs, Zak Williamson, Paul Sorrick, Mark Niemann-Ross, Christine Yarrow, Lee Huang (Ole's neighbor), John Hake, Adrian O'Lenskie, Colin Fleming, Harrison Liu, and the rest of the Adobe Developer Technologies group.

We appreciate the growing web of InDesign users and trainers with whom we love to trade cool tips and tricks, including Bob Levine, Anne-Marie Concepción, Sandee Cohen, Claudia McCue, Steve Werner, Pariah S. Burke, Scott Citron, Rufus Deuchler, Diane Burns, Avery Raskin, Dave Saunders, Branislav Milic, Mordy Golding, Mike Rankin, Michael Murphy, Pam Pfiffner, and Ted LoCascio.

Thanks to Jan C. Wright for our index. She won the 2009 ASI/H.W. Wilson Award for Excellence in Indexing for a previous edition—the first time a technical book has ever won the award.

Thanks to our friends at Peachpit Press for their patience, support, professionalism, patience, and understanding (and did we mention patience?), especially Susan Rimerman and Lisa "see myk" Brazieal.

David: "My deepest appreciation to my wife and partner, Debbie Carlson, as well as to our sons Gabriel and Daniel, who ensured that sanity wouldn't gain the upper hand. My thanks, too, go to Anne-Marie, Niyaz, Ted Falcon, and many other friends and helpers."

Ole: "Thanks to my incredible friends, to my partner, Amy Lanset, and to my son, Max Olav Kvern, for their love and support."

Bob: "I'm grateful for my wife Wendy, as well as to my twin sons Luke and Max, who agreed to be ignored for a couple months."

Olav Martin Kvern
okvern@ix.netcom.com

David Blatner
david@indesignsecrets.com

Bob Bringhurst
bobbringhurst@gmail.com

Type

CHAPTER 4

Ole's tale: "Late night. The pale glow from the monochrome monitor of my Compugraphic phototypesetter. The smell of the office standard 'French Vanilla' coffee—warming, now, for several hours and resembling nothing so much as battery acid. The gentle snoring of one of the staff writers, who is curled up in the warmth of the unit that holds the filmstrips containing the fonts I'm using to set his story.

"These are the things I think of when I hear the word 'typesetting'—they're memories from my job at Seattle's free rock and roll newspaper *The Rocket*, circa 1982. Desktop publishing didn't exist yet, and digital (as opposed to photo) typesetting systems—with their WYSIWYG displays—were rare. The codes and characters I saw on my screen wouldn't look anything like type until they were printed, one character at a time, on a strip of photographic film and developed. I could set just about any kind of type using that machine, provided the characters would fit on a piece of film not more than seven inches wide, and provided I didn't need to use characters from more than six fonts."

When desktop publishing appeared, we found that it couldn't do everything Ole could do with his Compugraphic—but that being able to see what our type would look like *before we printed it* more than made up for any deficiencies. These days, page layout programs are far more capable than Ole's trusty EditWriter. Does that mean, however, that there's no more room for improvement? For surprising new features? Is typesetting "done"?

Not a chance—InDesign offers a number of improvements and surprises in the area of typesetting. It's an evolutionary product—not a revolutionary one, but, on its release, InDesign became the best desktop typesetting program, and raised the bar for its competition.

In this chapter, we'll walk through InDesign's typesetting features. We'll start with character formatting (font, point size, kerning, and baseline shift are examples of character formatting), move on to paragraph formatting (indents, tabs, space above and below, and composition), and then dive into formatting using character and paragraph styles. Along the way, there may be a joke or two.

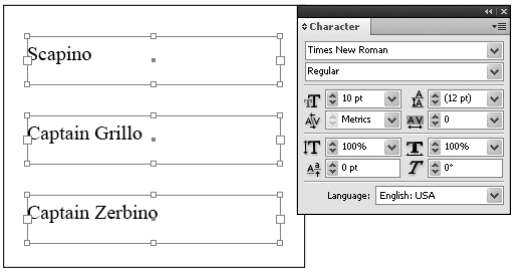
Selecting and Formatting Text

Generally, when you want to change the formatting of some text, you have to select it with the Type tool. However, there are two caveats to this statement. First, because paragraph formatting (which we'll discuss later) always applies to an entire paragraph, you don't have to select every character in the paragraph before applying it.

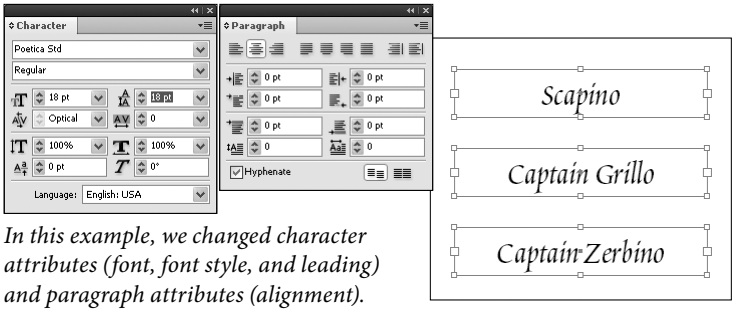
Second (and more interesting) is that you can apply text formatting to text frames you've selected using the Selection tool or the Direct Selection tool. When you do this, InDesign applies the formatting to all of the text in the text frame, including any overset text. InDesign won't let you use this method to apply formatting to text frames that are linked to other text frames. Tired of using the Type tool to select and format every photo caption on a page? Use the Selection tool to select them all and apply your formatting—it's easier, and it's quicker (see Figure 4-1).

FIGURE 4-1
Formatting the Text in Text Frames

Use the Selection tool to select the text frames you want to format…



…and apply formatting. InDesign applies the formatting to all of the text in the text frames. That's all there is to it.



In this example, we changed character attributes (font, font style, and leading) and paragraph attributes (alignment).

The ability to apply formatting with the Selection tools is very powerful, but it's also slightly dangerous. Let's say you set a single character to Zapf Dingbats somewhere in your text frame. If you select the text frame using the Selection tool and then apply a new font, every character—including that dingbat—gets changed.

The only warnings that InDesign gives you that some of the text in the selected text frame uses a different font are: the Font field in the Character panel is blank, and the Font submenu (under the Type menu) has hyphens next to each font.

Character Formatting

Character formatting controls the appearance of the individual letters in your publication. Font, type size, color, and leading are all aspects of character formatting. (Longtime QuarkXPress users won't think of leading as a character format, but we'll cover that next.)

We refer to all formatting that can be applied to a selected range of text as "character" formatting, and refer to formatting that InDesign applies at the paragraph level as "paragraph" formatting. Tab settings, indents, paragraph rules, space above, and space after are examples of paragraph formatting. There are areas of overlap in these definitions. Leading, for example, is really a property that applies to an entire *line* of text (InDesign uses only the largest leading value in a line), but we'll call it "character" formatting, nonetheless, because you can apply it to individual characters.

In addition to these distinctions, InDesign's paragraph styles can include character formatting, but apply to entire paragraphs. See "Styles," later in this chapter.

Character Formatting Controls

InDesign's character formatting controls are found in both the Character panel and the Control panel (see Figure 4-2). The controls in the panels are substantially the same, so we'll discuss them once.

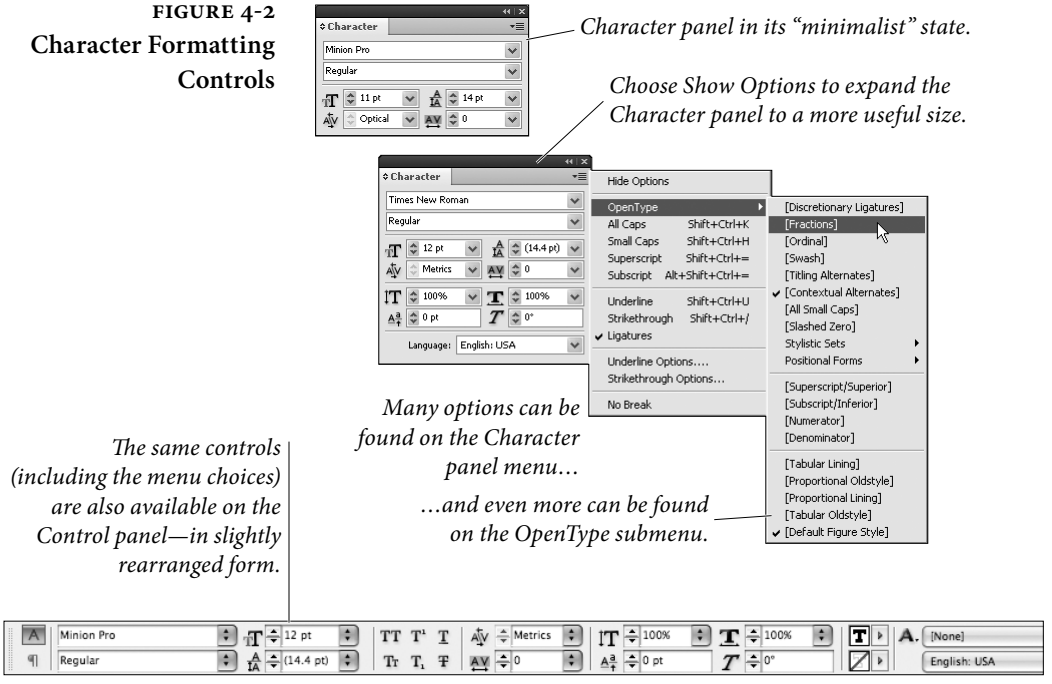
To display the Character panel and shift the focus to the panel's Font field, press Command-T/Ctrl-T. If the panel is already visible, InDesign hides it; you may need to press it twice.

To display the Control panel, press Command-Option-6/Ctrl-Alt-6. If the panel is already open, but is displaying the paragraph controls, press Command-Option-7/Ctrl-Alt-7.

Font Family and Font

Selecting a font in InDesign is a little bit different than selecting a font in most other page layout programs. To InDesign, fonts are categorized as font "families," and each family is made up of one or

FIGURE 4-2
Character Formatting Controls



more type styles. A font family is a set of typefaces designed to have a common "look." A "font," then, is specified by its font family and type style. In this book, we've used the font family Minion Pro, and the type style Regular for the body text—so the font of the body text is "Minion Pro Regular."

InDesign's user interface for selecting fonts mirrors this approach. When you choose a font from the Font submenu of the Type menu, you must select both the font family and a specific type style.

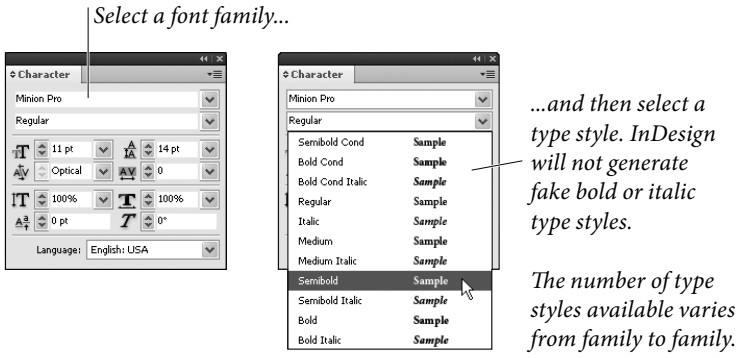
Note that InDesign does not have "type styles" in the same way that other programs do—it makes no assumption that the selected font family has a "bold" or "italic" member, and will never *generate* a fake bold or italic version. If you don't have a font for a particular type style, you won't see it on the Type Styles menu (see Figure 4-3).

To select a font family or type style, you can type into the appropriate field—you don't have to use the menu. As you type the name of a font family or type style, InDesign will display the available font or fonts that match the characters you typed. For instance you can type "T" and it will guess "Tekton" (if you have that font installed); if you meant "Times" then you may have to type "Ti" or even "Tim". Note that you can also press the up and down arrow keys, which is especially helpful in the Style field to move from Regular to Bold to Italic, and so on.

The most recently used fonts appear at the top of the Font submenu.

FIGURE 4-3
Selecting a Font

On the Mac OS, you can choose the family and style from the Font pop-up menu in a single step.



Font Style Keyboard Shortcuts. Although InDesign won't generate a bold or italic weight, you can type Command-Shift-B/Ctrl-Shift-B to make your text bold and Command-Shift-I/Ctrl-Shift-I to make it italic. If a font doesn't have a bold or italic version, InDesign will not change the text.

Symbols and Dingbats. Sometimes, when you change to a symbol font (such as Zapf Dingbats), you may encounter font substitution (the dreaded pink highlight). This can happen because InDesign is attempting to map the character from one font to another. To avoid this problem, hold down Shift as you apply the font.

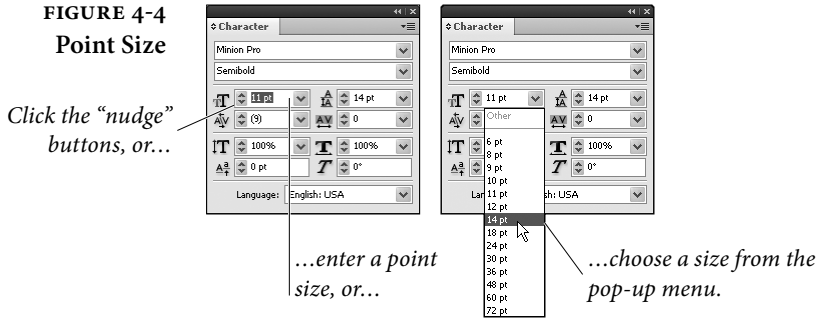
Duplicate Font Names. Some folks have more than one font with the same name on their systems—such as a TrueType and a PostScript version of Times Roman. While most programs just pick one (and you never know which you're getting), InDesign displays both fonts, including either T1 or TT in parentheses after the font name.

Size

You can change the size of text by entering the point size you want in the Size field of the Character or Control panel, or choose a point size from the attached pop-up menu (see Figure 4-4). If you type the size, you can specify it in .001-point increments. After you've entered the size you want, apply the change by pressing Return/Enter or by pressing Tab to move to another field.

Size Adjustment Keyboard Shortcuts. You can increase the size of selected type by pressing Command-Shift->/Ctrl-Shift->, or decrease the size by pressing Command-Shift-</Ctrl-Shift-<. The amount that InDesign increases or decreases the point size when you use these shortcuts depends on the value in the Size/Leading field in the Units & Increments Preferences dialog box.

FIGURE 4-4
Point Size



To increase or decrease the size of the selected text by five times the value entered in the Size/Leading field, you can add the Option or Alt key: Command-Option-Shift->/Ctrl-Alt-Shift->, or Command-Option-Shift-</Ctrl-Alt-Shift-<.

Scaling Text by Scaling the Frame. You can scale text by scaling the frame itself. To do this, select the text frame with the Selection tool, then hold down the Command/Ctrl key and drag a corner or side handle. Hold down Command-Shift/Ctrl-Shift as you drag to scale proportionally (a good thing, as far as text is concerned).

Leading

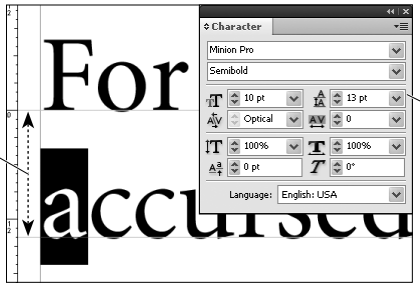
Text characters—usually—sit on an imaginary line, the *baseline*. *Leading* (pronounced "ledding") is the vertical distance from the baseline of one line of text to the next text baseline. When you hear "10 on 12" or see "10/12", it means "10-point text on 12-point leading." In InDesign, leading is measured from the baseline of a line of text to the baseline of the line of text above (see Figure 4-5). When you increase the leading in a line, you push that line farther from the line above it, and farther down from the top of the text frame.

In InDesign—as in PageMaker—leading is an attribute of individual characters, but the largest leading value in a line predominates (see Figure 4-6). This differs from QuarkXPress, where leading is a paragraph attribute (although if you use QuarkXPress's relative leading mode, the largest leading in a line predominates).

For those of us who came to desktop publishing from typesetting, the idea of leading being a character attribute seems more natural than QuarkXPress' method of setting it at the paragraph level. Fortunately, InDesign lets you have it both ways: When you turn on the Apply Leading to Entire Paragraphs option in the Type pane of the Preferences dialog box, the program automatically sets the leading of every character in a paragraph to the same value. QuarkXPress users will probably want to turn this option on.

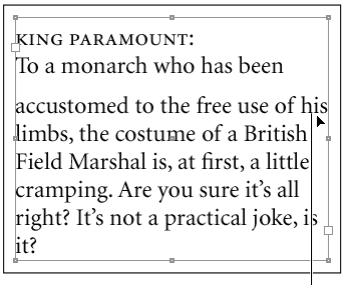
FIGURE 4-5
Leading

Leading is the distance from the baseline of one line to the baseline of the line above it.

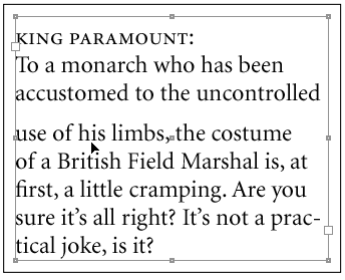


You set the leading of selected characters using the Leading control—enter a value, click the arrows, or choose a value from the pop-up menu. You can also choose Auto from the pop-up menu to base the leading on the point size of the text.

FIGURE 4-6
The Largest Leading in a Line Wins



This word has a larger leading value than the other characters in the line.



When the word moves to another line (due, in this example, to a change in the text), the larger leading is applied to that line.

However, this preference only affects paragraphs that you change *after* you set it. For instance, you could have it on most of the time, then turn it off in order to vary the leading of lines within a paragraph—something you sometimes have to do to optically balance display copy—and then turn the preference back on again.

How to Avoid Wacky Leading. The main disadvantage of making leading a character attribute (when the Apply Leading to Entire Paragraphs option is turned off) is that it requires a bit more vigilance on your part than the "leading-as-a-paragraph-attribute" approach taken by QuarkXPress and most word processors. Most of the time, leading values should be the same for all of the characters in the paragraph. If, as you apply leading amounts, you fail to select all of the characters in a paragraph, you'll get leading that varies from line to line—which, most of the time, is a typesetting mistake.

You can also get this effect if you leave your paragraph's leading set to the default Auto leading, which always sets the leading to some percentage (usually 120%) of the text size—or, more specifically, some percentage of the largest character on a line. This is true even when Apply to Entire Paragraph is turned on. We strongly urge you not to use Auto leading (except for inline frames and graphics, as discussed in Chapter 6, "Where Text Meets Graphics").

If you've seen paragraphs where the leading of the last line of the paragraph is clearly different from that of the lines above it, you know exactly what we're talking about (see Figure 4-7).

It's simple—the carriage return, that sneaky invisible character, can have a different leading value than the other lines in the paragraph. When the person formatting the text selected the paragraph, they failed to select the carriage return. To avoid this, make sure you select the entire paragraph before applying formatting. Better yet, apply a paragraph style. When you apply a paragraph style, InDesign applies the character formatting specified in the style—including leading—to every character in the paragraph.

Leading Shortcuts. You can decrease the leading of selected type by pressing Option-Up arrow/Alt-Up arrow, or increase the size by pressing Option-Down arrow/Alt-Down arrow. (Yes, this does seem counterintuitive; think of it as pushing the line up or down.) The amount that InDesign increases or decreases the leading depends on the value you entered in the Size/Leading field in the Units & Increments Preferences dialog box (for more on units and increments, see Chapter 1, "Workspace").

To decrease the leading of the selected text by five times the value in the Size/Leading field, press Command-Option-Up arrow/Ctrl-Alt-Up arrow. To increase the leading by the same amount, press Command-Option-Down arrow/Ctrl-Alt-Down arrow.

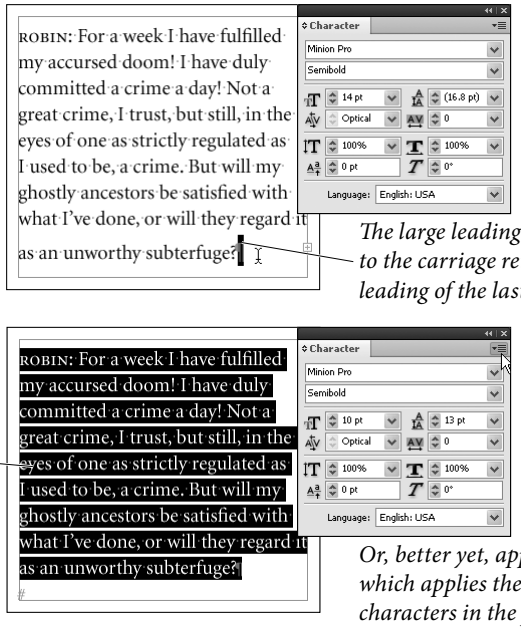


FIGURE 4-7
That Crazy Carriage Return

In this example, the carriage return character carries an Auto leading value and point size left over from previous paragraph formatting (the leading of the rest of the text in the paragraph is 13 points).

The large leading value applied to the carriage return distorts the leading of the last line of text.

To avoid this problem, select the entire paragraph before applying character formatting—this selects the carriage return character.

Or, better yet, apply a paragraph style, which applies the same leading to all characters in the paragraph.

Leading Techniques. Here are a few tips for adjusting leading.

- Increase leading as you increase line length (the column width). Solid leading (such as 12 point text on 12 points leading) produces almost unreadable text for all but the narrowest of lines.
- Use extra leading for sans serif or bold type.
- Fonts with a small x-height (the height of the lowercase "x" in relation to the height of the capital letters) can often use a smaller leading value than those with a large x-height.
- Decrease leading as point size increases. Large display or headline type needs less leading than body copy. You can often get by with solid leading or less—just make certain that the descenders of one line don't bump into the ascenders of the line below.

Kerning

The goal of kerning—the adjustment of the space between characters—is to achieve even spacing. InDesign offers both pair kerning (the adjustment of the space between adjacent characters) and tracking (or "range kerning")—the adjustment of all of the inter-character spaces in a series of characters.

For each space between any pair of characters in a publication, InDesign applies the total of the pair kerning and tracking values (so if you set kerning to 50 and tracking to –50, you will not see any change in the composition of the text).

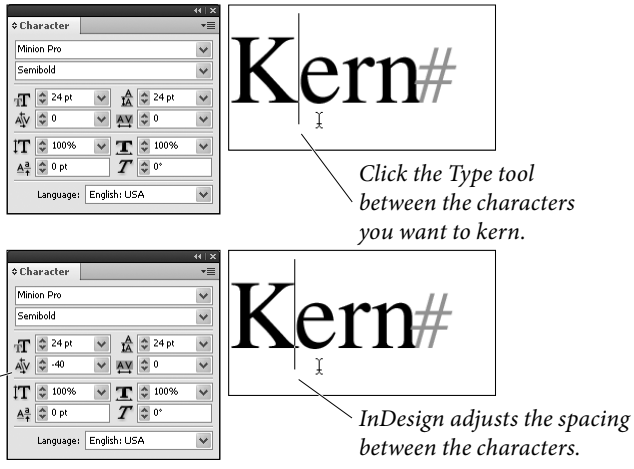
InDesign adjusts kerning using units equal to one-thousandth of an em. An *em* is equal in width to the size of the type—for instance, in 18 point text, an em is 18 points wide, and so each unit in the kerning or tracking fields equals $^{18}/_{1,000}$ point (about .00025 inch). You can enter values from –1000 (minus one em) to 10000 (plus 10 ems) in the Kerning and Tracking fields.

Manual Kerning

To adjust spacing between a pair of characters, move the text insertion point between the characters and apply manual kerning (see Figure 4-8). Use any of the following techniques.

- Enter a value in the Kerning field of the Character panel or Control panel. If the kerning field already contains a value entered by one of the automatic kerning methods (see below), you can replace the value by typing over it, or add to or subtract from it (by typing a "+" or "-" between the value and the amount you want to add or subtract).

FIGURE 4-8
Kerning Text



- Click the arrow buttons attached to the Kerning field. Click the up button to increase the kerning amount by the value you entered in the Kerning field in the Units & Increments Preferences dialog box, or click the down button to decrease kerning by the same amount.
- Press a keyboard shortcut (see Table 4-1).

To remove all kerning and tracking from the selected text, press Command-Option-Q/Ctrl-Alt-Q (this sets tracking to zero and sets the kerning method to Metrics).

You can't apply pair kerning when you have a range of text selected—if you try, InDesign displays an error message. When you want to apply a kerning value to a range of text, use Tracking.

Automatic Kerning

InDesign offers two automatic kerning methods: pair kerning based on kerning pairs found in the font itself (choose Metrics from the Kerning pop-up menu), and kerning based on the outlines of the characters (choose Optical). To see the difference between the two methods take a look at Figure 4-9.

- **Metrics.** When you turn on the Metrics automatic kerning method, InDesign reads the kerning pairs built into the font by the font's designer (or publisher). These kerning pairs cover—or attempt to cover—the most common letter combinations (in English, anyway), and there are usually about 128 pairs defined in a typical font.

  You'd think that using the kerning pairs defined in the font would be the perfect way to apply automatic kerning to your text. Who, after all, knows the spacing peculiarities of a given font

TABLE 4-1
Kerning Keyboard Shortcuts

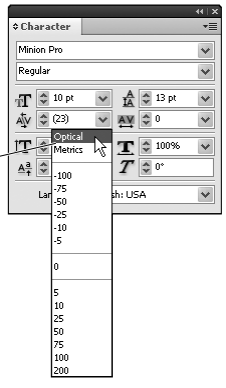
To change kerning by:	Press:
+20/1,000 em*	Option-Right arrow/ Alt-Right arrow
-20/1,000 em*	Option-Left arrow/Alt-Left arrow
+100/1,000 em**	Command-Option-Right arrow/ Ctrl-Alt-Right arrow
-100/1,000 em**	Command-Option-Left arrow/ Ctrl-Alt-Left arrow
Reset Kerning	Command-Option-Q/ Ctrl-Alt-Q

* This is the default value in the Kerning field of the Units & Increments Preferences dialog box.

** Or five times the default kerning amount.

FIGURE 4-9
Automatic Kerning Methods

Choose Optical or Metrics from the Kerning pop-up menu.



Automatic kerning using the Metric method.

Automatic kerning using the Optical method.

better than its designer? Would that this were true! In reality, very few fonts contain well-thought-out kerning pairs (often, pair kerning tables are simply *copied* from one font to another), and the number of kerning pairs defined per font is inadequate (a really well-kerned font might contain several *thousand* pairs, tweaked specifically for the characters in that typeface).

We really need a better method—a method that can adjust the spacing between *every* character pair, while taking into account the peculiarities of the character shapes for a particular font. We also need a kerning method that can automatically adjust the spacing between characters of different fonts. With InDesign's Optical kerning method, we get both.

- **Optical.** The Optical kerning method considers the composed shapes of the characters and applies kerning to even out spacing differences between characters.

In general, the kerning applied by InDesign when you use the Optical kerning method looks looser than that applied by the Metrics kerning method. That's okay—once you've accomplished even spacing, you can always track the text to tighten or loosen its overall appearance. Because tracking applies the same kerning value to all of the text in the selection, in addition to any pair kerning, the even spacing applied by the Optical kerning method is maintained.

Viewing Automatic Kerning Amounts. As you move your cursor through the text, you'll be able to see the kerning values applied to the text in the Kerning field of the Character panel or Control panel. Kerning values specified by Optical kerning or Metrics kerning are displayed surrounded by parentheses; manual kerning values you've entered are not (see Figure 4-10).

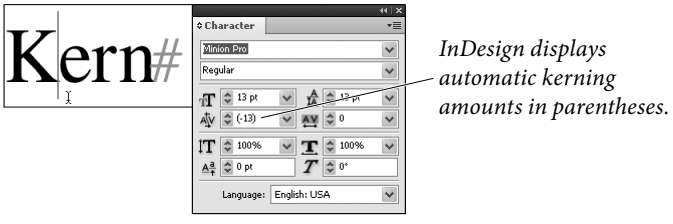


FIGURE 4-10
How You Can Tell It's Automatic Kerning

Changing Word Spacing. It's not entirely true that you can't apply kerning when more than one character is selected. You can select a range of text and select Metrics, Optical, or 0 (zero) from the pop-up menu attached to the Kerning field.

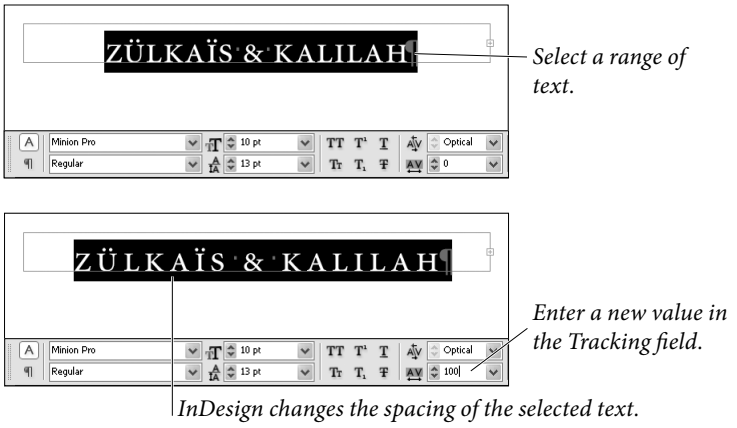
If you want to increase the spacing between words but don't want to change the letterspacing of a range of text, press Command-Option-\ or Ctrl-Alt-\ (backslash) to add the base kerning increment (as defined by the value in the Kerning field in the Units & Increments Preferences dialog box) after each space character in the range. Hold down Shift as you press this shortcut, and InDesign adds kerning by five times the base kerning amount. To decrease word spacing, press Command-Option-Delete/Ctrl-Alt-Backspace (add the Shift key to the shortcuts to multiply the effect by five).

This keystroke works simply by changing the kerning after each space character. You can always go back and change the kerning, or use Find/Change to remove it.

Tracking

Tracking, in InDesign, applies the same kerning value to every character in a selected range of text (see Figure 4-11). When you change the tracking of some text, InDesign applies the tracking in addition

FIGURE 4-11
Tracking



to any kerning values applied to the text (regardless of the method—manual or automatic—used to enter the pair kerning). Note that this is the same as the definition of tracking used by QuarkXPress, and is different from the definition used by PageMaker. In PageMaker, tracking also applies kerning, but the amount varies depending on the point size of the selected text and the tracking table in use. In PageMaker, InDesign's tracking would be called "range kerning."

Just as you cannot apply kerning using the Kerning field when you have multiple characters selected, you can't change the Tracking field when the text insertion point is between two characters—you have to have one or more characters selected. (Actually, you *can* change it, but it doesn't do anything.)

Note that the default keyboard shortcuts for tracking are exactly the same as those for kerning; which one you get depends on whether or not you have a range of text selected.

Tracking Tips. The following are a few of our favorite tracking tips.

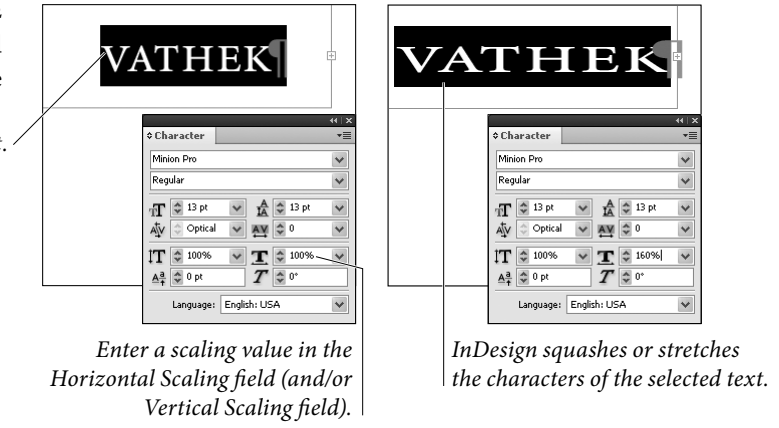
- If you're setting text in all capitals or the small caps style, add 20 or 50 units of tracking to the text. Do not add tracking to the last character of the last word in the text, as that will affect the amount of space after the word, too.
- Printing white text on a black background often requires a little extra tracking, too. That's because the negative (black) space makes the white characters seem closer together.
- Larger type needs to be tracked more tightly (with negative tracking values). Often, the larger the tighter, though there are aesthetic limits to this rule. Advertising headline copy will often be tracked until the characters just "kiss."

- A condensed typeface (such as Futura Condensed) can usually do with a little tighter tracking. Sometimes we'll apply a setting as small as -10 to a text block to make it hold together better.
- When you're setting justified text and you get bad line breaks, or if you have an extra word by itself at the end of a paragraph, you can track the whole paragraph plus or minus one or two units without it being too apparent. Sometimes that's just enough to fix these problems.

Horizontal and Vertical Scaling

Enter a value in the Horizontal Scaling field or the Vertical Scaling field (or both) to change the size of the selected text (see Figure 4-12). When the values you enter in these fields are not equal, you're creating fake "expanded" or "condensed" type. We say "fake" because true expanded or condensed characters must be drawn by a type designer—when you simply scale the type, the thick and thin strokes of the characters become distorted. Entering values in these fields does not affect the point size of the type.

FIGURE 4-12
Squashing and Stretching Type

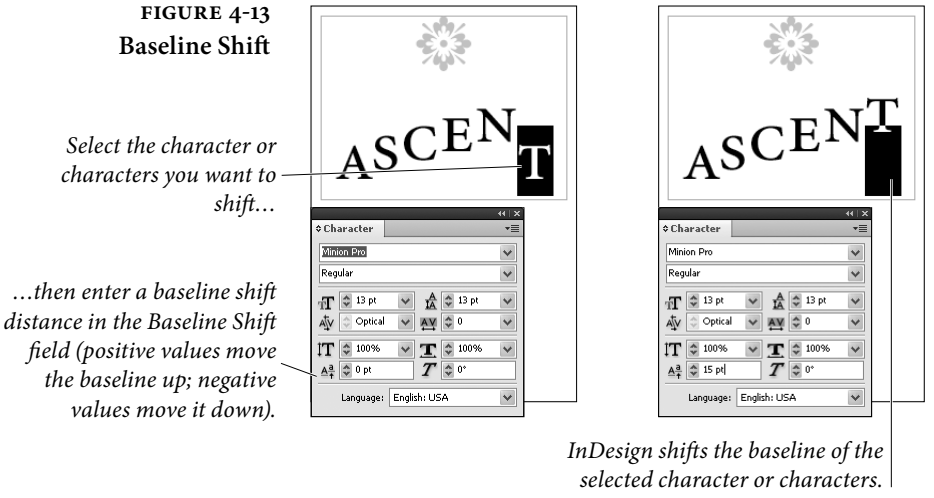


Baseline Shift

Sometimes, you need to raise the baseline of a character or characters above the baseline of the surrounding text (or lower it below the baseline). In pre-DTP typesetting, we would accomplish this by decreasing or increasing the leading applied to the character. However, that won't work in modern programs—remember, in InDesign the largest leading in the line predominates. Instead, use the Baseline Shift field in the Character panel or Control panel (see Figure 4-13).

Enter an amount in the Baseline Shift field to shift the baseline of the selected text by that amount. As you'd expect, positive values move the selected text up from the baseline; negative values move the selected text down from the baseline.

FIGURE 4-13
Baseline Shift



While it's tempting to use Baseline Shift to adjust numbers in formulae, registered trademark symbols, and so on, it's better to use the Superscript or Subscript features.

Baseline Shift Keyboard Shortcuts. To apply baseline shift using your keyboard, select some text and press Option-Shift-Up arrow/Alt-Shift-Up arrow to move the baseline of the text up two points—or whatever value you've entered in the Baseline Shift field of the Units & Increments Preferences dialog box, or Option-Shift-Down arrow/Alt-Shift-Down arrow to shift it down by the same distance.

To shift the baseline of the selected text *up* by a distance equal to five times the value you entered in the Units & Increments Preferences dialog box, press Command-Option-Shift-Up arrow/Ctrl-Alt-Shift-Up arrow. To shift the baseline down by the same amount, press Command-Option-Shift-Down arrow/Ctrl-Alt-Shift-Down arrow.

Skewing

When you apply skewing to a range of characters, InDesign slants the vertical axis of the type by the angle you enter here (see Figure 4-14). You can enter from –85 degrees to 85 degrees. Positive skew values slant the type to the right; negative values slant it to the left.

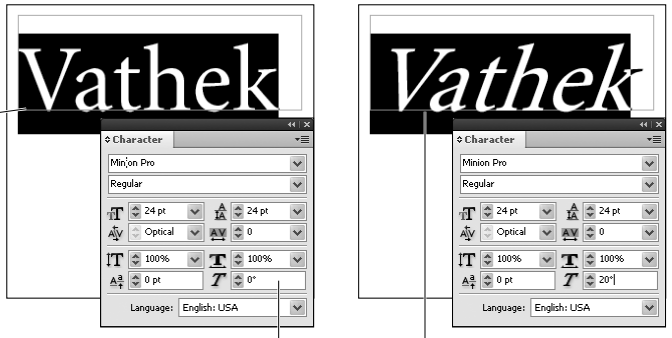
This might be useful as a special text effect, but you shouldn't count on it to provide an "italic" version of a font family that lacks a true italic type style. Why? Because there's more to an italic font than simple slanting of the characters (see Figure 4-15).

Language

The language you choose for a range of text determines the dictionary InDesign uses to hyphenate and check the spelling of the text (see Figure 4-16). Because language is a character-level attribute, you

FIGURE 4-14
Skewing Text

Select some text.



Enter a value in the Skew field.

InDesign skews the characters of the selected text.

FIGURE 4-15
Real and Fake Italic Characters

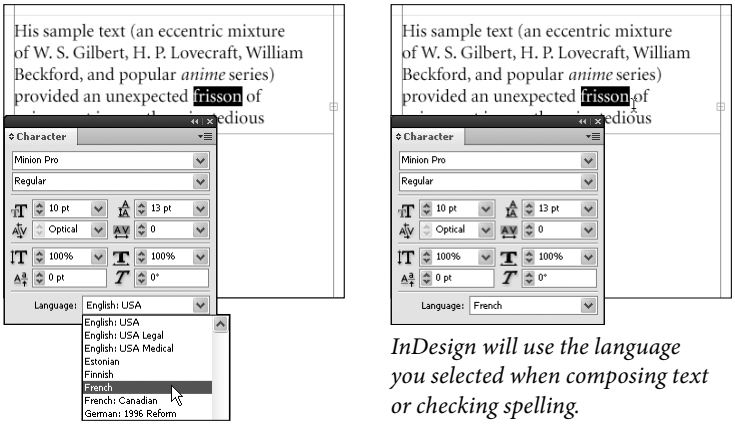
Note the differences in character shapes.

Real: Minion Pro Italic

Fake: Minion Pro Regular with 10 degree skewing.

FIGURE 4-16
Assigning a Language

Select a word or phrase, then select a language from the Language pop-up menu.



InDesign will use the language you selected when composing text or checking spelling.

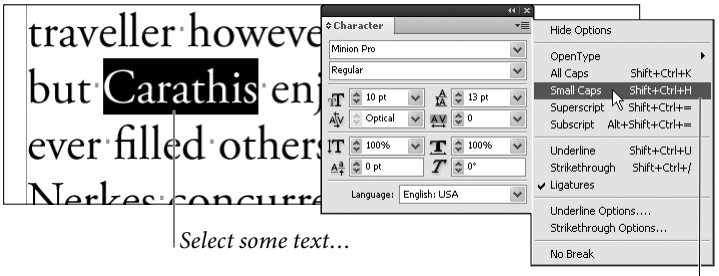
can apply a specific language to individual words—which means you can tell InDesign to stop flagging "frisson" or "gemütlichkeit" as misspelled words, if you want. The only languages that show up in the Language pop-up menu in the Character panel or Control panel are those for which you have a dictionary installed. If the language you're looking for isn't in this list, then you can use the InDesign installer to install that dictionary for you.

Case Options

You can change the case of selected characters to All Caps or Small Caps by choosing All Caps or Small Caps from the Character panel menu (see Figure 4-17). InDesign does not replace the characters

FIGURE 4-17
All Caps and Small Caps

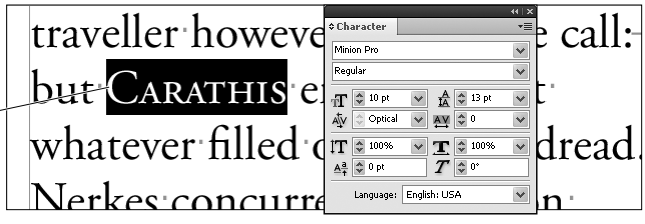
These two options work the same way; we'll demonstrate small caps.



Select some text…

…then choose Small Caps from the Character panel or Control panel menu

If you're using an OpenType font (as in this example), InDesign displays the small caps version of the selected characters (if the OpenType font contains small caps alternate characters).



If you're using a PostScript Type 1 or TrueType font, InDesign displays scaled, capitalized versions of the selected characters.

Adobe Garamond Pro (OpenType)
THESE ARE TRUE SMALL CAPS
Adobe Garamond (PostScript Type 1)
THESE ARE NOT TRUE SMALL CAPS

If you're using a PostScript Type 1 font, don't use the Small Caps character formatting option; instead, change the font of the text to an "expert set."

themselves; it simply changes they way they look and print. To InDesign's spelling checker or Find and Change features, the text is exactly as it was entered—not the way it appears on your screen.

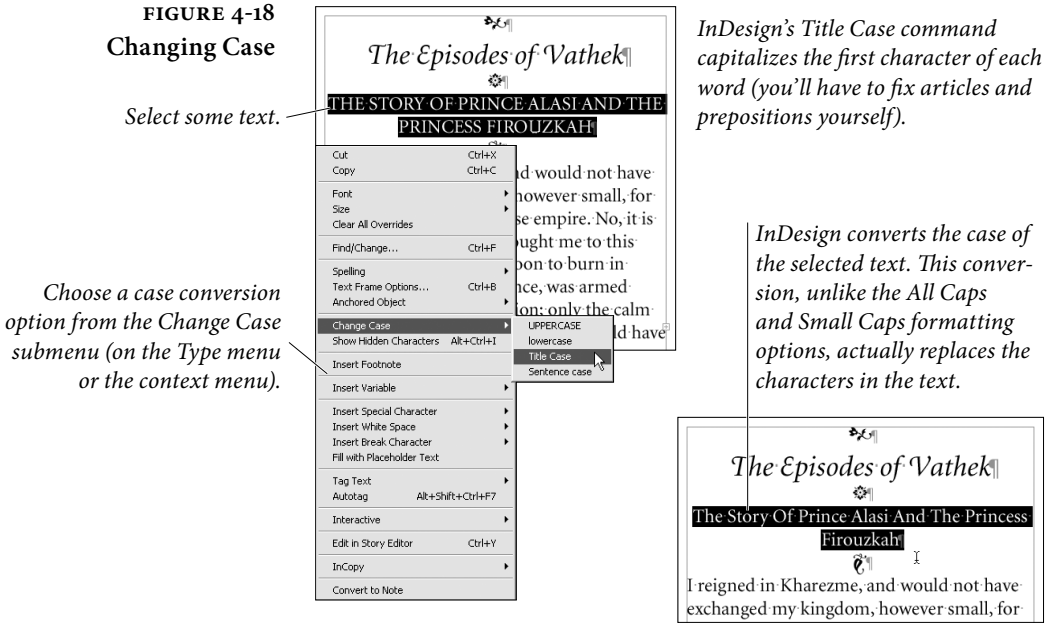
When you choose Small Caps from the Character panel menu (or press Command-Shift-H/Ctrl-Shift-H), InDesign examines the font used to format the selected text. If the font is an OpenType font, and if the font contains a set of true small caps characters, InDesign uses true small caps. InDesign is also smart enough to do this if you have a non-OpenType font that has an "Expert" version. If the font is not an OpenType font, doesn't have an Expert font available, or doesn't contain small caps characters, InDesign scales regular uppercase characters down to 70 percent (or whatever value you entered in the Small Cap field of the Type pane of the Preferences dialog box, as described in Chapter 1, "Workspace").

Changing Case

In addition to being able to temporarily change the case of characters using the case options, you can have InDesign change the case of the characters by typing new characters for you using the Change Case submenu (which you'll find on the Type menu and on the context menu when text is selected).

To change the case of selected characters, choose an option: Uppercase, Lowercase, Title Case, or Sentence Case. Uppercase and Lowercase are self-explanatory. Sentence Case capitalizes the first letter of each sentence. Title Case is very simpleminded: it capitalizes the first character of each word in the selection, even if the word is "the," "and," or another preposition or article (see Figure 4-18).

FIGURE 4-18
Changing Case



Underline

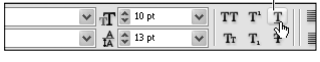
When you choose Underline from the Character panel menu, click the Underline button in the Control panel, or press Command-Shift-U/Ctrl-Shift-U, InDesign applies an underline to the selected text (see Figure 4-19).

To customize the underline, select Underline Options from the Character panel menu or the Control panel menu to display the Underline Options dialog box, where you'll find controls for setting the thickness, offset, color, and stroke style of the underscore. You can't save these settings as a style or preset, but you can build them into the definition of a character style.

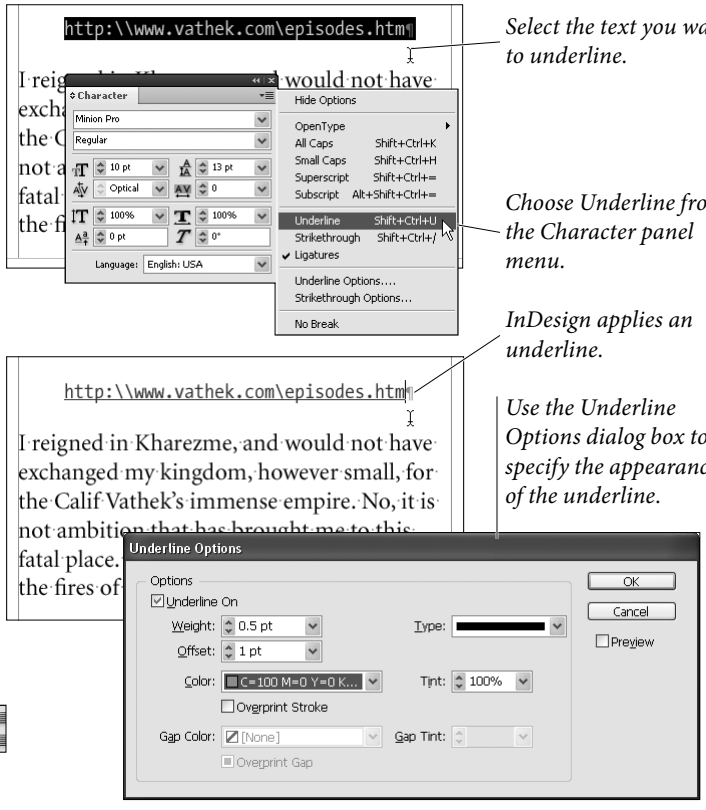
Breaking at Spaces. InDesign's underline also includes any spaces in the selection. Some designs require that underlines break at spaces in the text. You could laboriously select each space and turn off the underline attribute, by why not use Find/Change to do the work for you? Find a space in the selection with the Underline attribute, then replace it with a space with Underline turned off.

FIGURE 4-19
Underline

By default, stroke weights are based on the size of the text.



Here's a quick way to display the Underline Options dialog box: hold down Option/Alt as you click the Underline button on the Control panel.

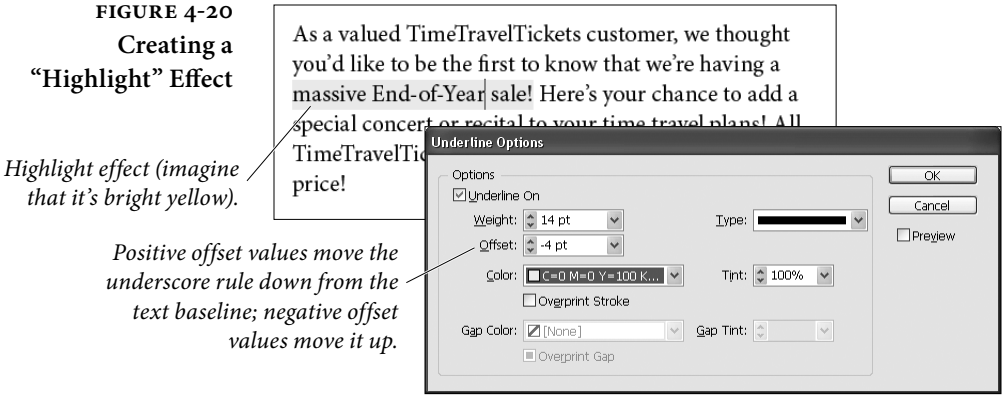


Breaking Underlines at Descenders. We said that there was no way to break underlines at descenders—but there is an inelegant workaround: apply a white stroke to the characters. The stroke will overlap the underline. You can use Find/Change to search for characters with descenders (such as the "j" or the "y") and use the Format button in the Change To area to give them a stroke.

Highlighting Text. Want to make some text look as if it's been highlighted with a felt "highlight" marker? You can simulate the effect using a custom underline (see Figure 4-20). Make your underline larger than the text it's supposed to cover and apply a negative offset so that it moves up to cover the text. Be sure to change the color of the underscore to yellow or pink or something that will contrast with the text its highlighting. Note that the color actually falls behind the text, but the effect will be as though the highlight was drawn over it.

You can also create interesting highlight effects by mixing a custom underline with a custom strikethrough. For instance, you could make a line appear above and below some text, sort of like putting the text in a stripe.

FIGURE 4-20
Creating a "Highlight" Effect



Highlight effect (imagine that it's bright yellow).

Positive offset values move the underscore rule down from the text baseline; negative offset values move it up.

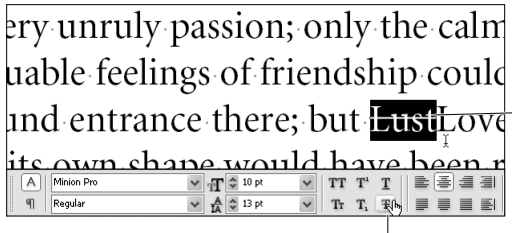
Strikethrough

When you choose Strikethrough from the Character panel menu (or click the Strikethrough button in the Control panel or press Command-Shift-?/Ctrl-Shift-?), InDesign applies the strikethrough text effect to the selected text (see Figure 4-21). To remove the Strikethrough text effect, select the feature or press the keystroke again.

The strikethrough style isn't particularly consistent; it changes its thickness and distance from the baseline depending on the font. However, you can control the strikethrough style by selecting Strikethrough Options from the Character or Control panel menu. The options here are very similar to those in the Underline Options dialog box: You can adjust the thickness, color, offset (from the baseline), and style of the line. If you're applying a colored strikethrough

FIGURE 4-21
Strikethrough

By default, the stroke weight of the Strikethrough effect varies based on the size of the text.

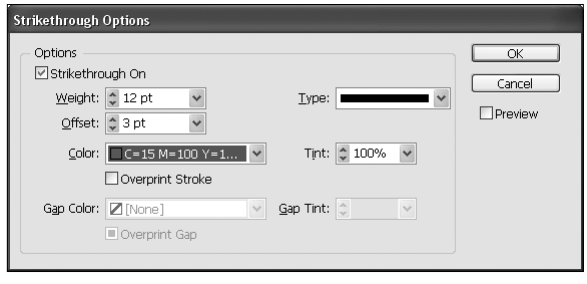


Select some text…

…then choose Strikethrough from the Character panel menu or Option/Alt-click the Strikethrough button on the Control panel.

You can use the Strikethrough Options dialog box to specify the appearance and position of the strikethrough rule.

To display the Strikethrough Options dialog box, hold down Option/Alt as you click the Strikethrough button in the Control panel, or choose Strikethrough Options from the Control panel menu.



on top of black text, you may want to set it to overprint so that it won't knock out a fine white line—which would be difficult to register on press. If so, make sure you like the result by turning on Overprint Preview (from the View menu).

Ligatures

Some character combinations are just trouble—from a typesetting standpoint, at least. In particular, when you combine the lowercase "f" character with "f," "i," or "l," the tops of the characters run into each other. To compensate for this, type designers usually provide ligatures—special characters in the font that are "tied" ("ligature" means "tie") together.

When you choose Ligatures from the Character panel's menu, InDesign replaces some of the character combinations in the selected range of text with the corresponding ligatures (see Figure 4-22).

If the font you've selected is not an OpenType font, InDesign replaces only the "fl" and "fi" character combinations. In Windows, InDesign uses these ligature characters if they're available in the font (and they are, for most PostScript Type 1 fonts), even though they are not part of the Windows character set—that is, there is usually no way to type them. If the font you've selected is an OpenType font, InDesign makes the ligature substitutions are suggested by the font.

OpenType fonts can also feature other sorts of ligatures—for more on this topic, see "OpenType Fonts," later in this chapter.

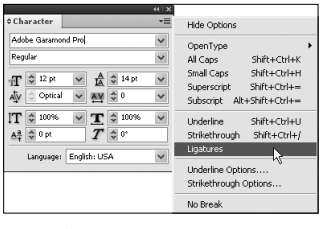
Superscript and Subscript

While you can always create superscript or subscript characters (for use in fractions or exponential notation) by changing the point size and baseline shift of selected characters, InDesign provides a shortcut: the Superscript and Subscript text effects (see Figure 4-23).

When you select Superscript or Subscript from the Character panel menu, InDesign scales the selected text and shifts its baseline. (You can also press Command-Shift-=/Ctrl-Shift-= for superscript or

FIGURE 4-22
Ligatures

Select some text and then choose Ligatures from the Character panel menu.



If you're using an OpenType font, InDesign uses additional ligatures defined in the font. In this example, InDesign applies the "ffi" and "ffl" ligatures.

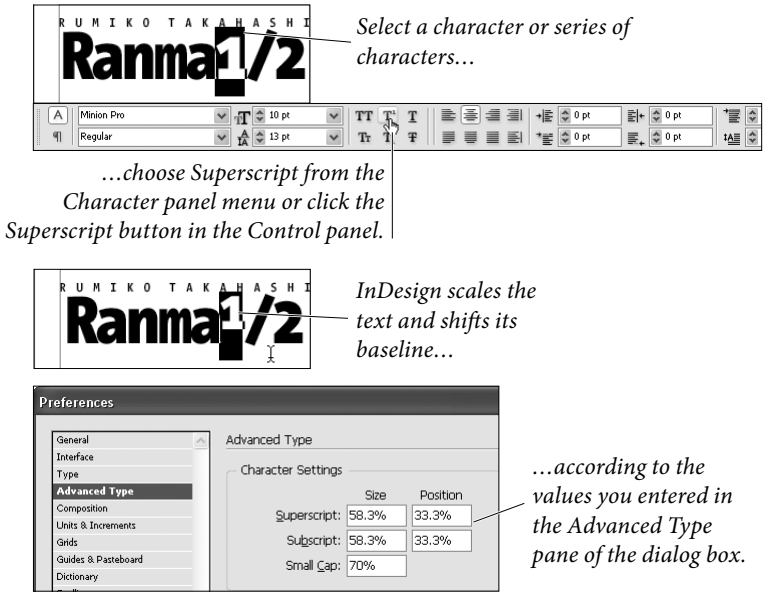
Ligatures off
Adobe Garamond Pro (OpenType)
file difficult reflect affliction

Adobe Garamond (PostScript Type 1)
file difficult reflect affliction

Ligatures on
Adobe Garamond Pro (OpenType)
file difficult reflect affliction

Adobe Garamond (PostScript Type 1)
file difficult reflect affliction

FIGURE 4-23
Superscript and Subscript



Tip: To display the Advanced Type pane of the Preferences dialog box, hold down Option/Alt and click the Superscript or Subscript button in the Control panel.

Command-Option-Shift-=/Ctrl-Alt-Shift-= for subscript.) InDesign calculates the scaling and baseline shift by multiplying the current text size and leading by the values you've set in the Size fields in the Advanced Type pane of the Preferences dialog box (see "Text Preferences" in Chapter 1, "Workspace").

If you are using an OpenType font that has true Superscript and Subscript characters, use Superscript/Superior and Subscript/Inferior options in the OpenType submenu (see below).

No Break This one is really easy to explain: To prevent a range of text from breaking across lines, select the text and turn on the No Break option in the Character or Control panel menu.

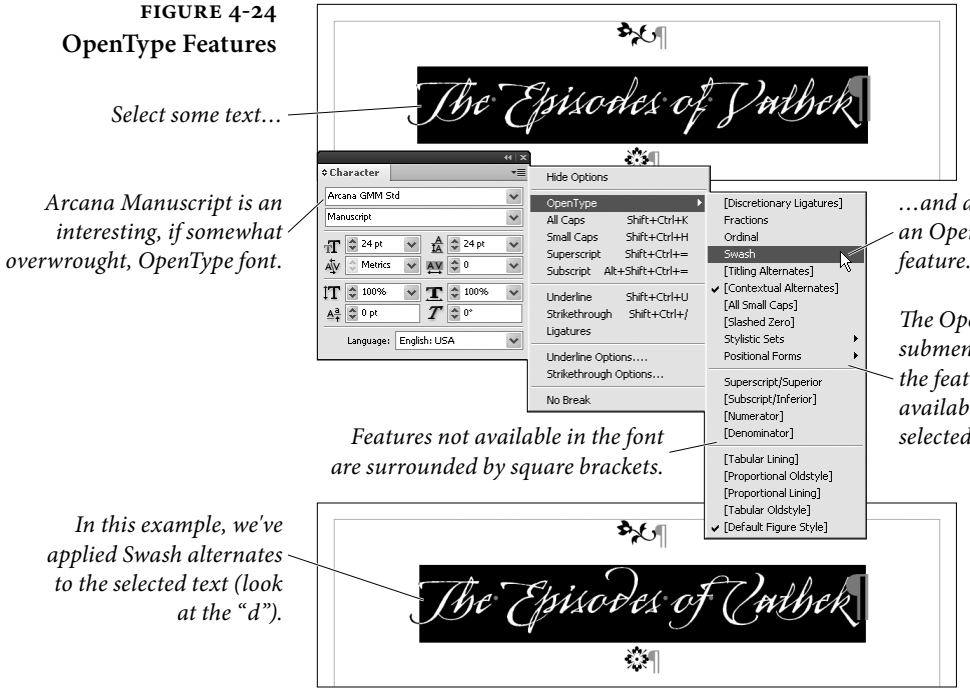
OpenType Fonts

We've mentioned OpenType fonts a few times in the chapter so far; however, we should probably take a moment to discuss them. The OpenType font specification was created jointly by Microsoft and Adobe as a way to represent a font with only a single file on both Macintosh and Windows (so you can move the font cross-platform). The characters are encoded using the international standard Unicode, so each font can have hundreds, or even thousands of different characters—even the very large character sets in non-Roman languages such as Japanese.

InDesign can perform special tricks with OpenType fonts, such as replacing characters with swashes, or adding ligatures for character pairs such as ct and ffi.

Most of the special OpenType typesetting features in InDesign are hidden in the OpenType submenu in the Character or Control panel's menu (see Figure 4-24). If a font doesn't support one of these features, it appears in the menu within square brackets ("[Swash]").

FIGURE 4-24
OpenType Features



Alternate Characters

The OpenType features work by replacing one or more glyphs with another single glyph. "fi" and "fl" ligatures that we discussed earlier are a great example of this, but they're only the beginning.

Discretionary Ligatures. Font designers love making ligatures, but they recognize that users won't want to use more esoteric ligatures (such as "ct" or "st") in everyday text. If you select some text and turn on the Discretionary Ligatures feature, InDesign uses these lesser-known ligatures (if they're available in the font). We usually turn this off except when we're trying to make something look "old fashioned," or when using a script typeface (such as Bickham Script Pro).

Fractions. Changing fake fractions (such as 1/2) to real fractions (½) has long been a thorn in the side of anyone laying out cookbooks

or construction manuals. Fortunately, you can now just turn on the Fractions feature and anything that looks like a fraction will convert to the proper character automatically.

In some OpenType typefaces, only very basic fractions such as ½ and ¼ are converted. Other typefaces support those plus some extended fractions, such as ⅔ and ⅝. Some fonts support arbitrary fractions such as $^{355}/_{113}$. It depends on the design of the font.

Don't turn on the Fractions feature for all your text because InDesign often assumes that *all* your numbers and much of your punctuation are part of fractions and turns them into numerators.

Ordinal. "First," "second," and "third" are all examples of ordinal numbers. InDesign can automatically set the "st", "nd", and "rd" (or the "o" and "a" in Spanish) to superscript when you turn Ordinal on in the OpenType submenu. "3rd," for example, becomes "3rd".

Swash. When you need to give a character a little more flair, select it and turn on the Swash feature. Swashes are typically used at the beginning or ending of words or sentences. You can see if a particular OpenType font has any swash characters by opening the Glyph panel and looking for Swash in the Show pop-up menu; some fonts (such as Adobe Caslon Pro) have swashes in their italic styles only.

Titling Alternates. Some OpenType fonts have special "titling" characters that are designed for all-uppercase type set at large sizes.

Contextual Alternates. Some OpenType fonts—mostly the script faces—have contextual ligatures and connecting alternates, which are very similar to ligatures. When you turn on Contextual Alternates, the result looks more like handwriting because the alternate characters connect to each other.

All Small Caps. When you turn on the Small Caps feature (which we described in "Case Options," earlier), InDesign leaves uppercase characters alone. All Small Caps, however, forces uppercase characters to appear as lowercase small caps. This is useful when formatting acronyms such as DOS, NASA, or IBM.

Slashed Zero. The problem with the number 0 is that it looks far too much like the letter O in some fonts. Some folks like to differentiate the two by using a slashed zero (0) in place of a zero. When you apply the Slashed Zero OpenType style, every zero appears with a slash automatically.

Stylistic Sets. A few fonts go beyond offering a swash or contextual alternate here and there, and provide whole sets of alternates that each give a slightly different feel to the face as a whole. For example, you might like Thomas Phinney's Hypatia Sans Pro, but realize that you don't like the font's double-loop "g". No problem: Turn on stylistic set number four and the character changes throughout the selection (see Figure 4-25). You can enable more than one stylistic set at a time; select it once to turn it on, select it again to turn it off.

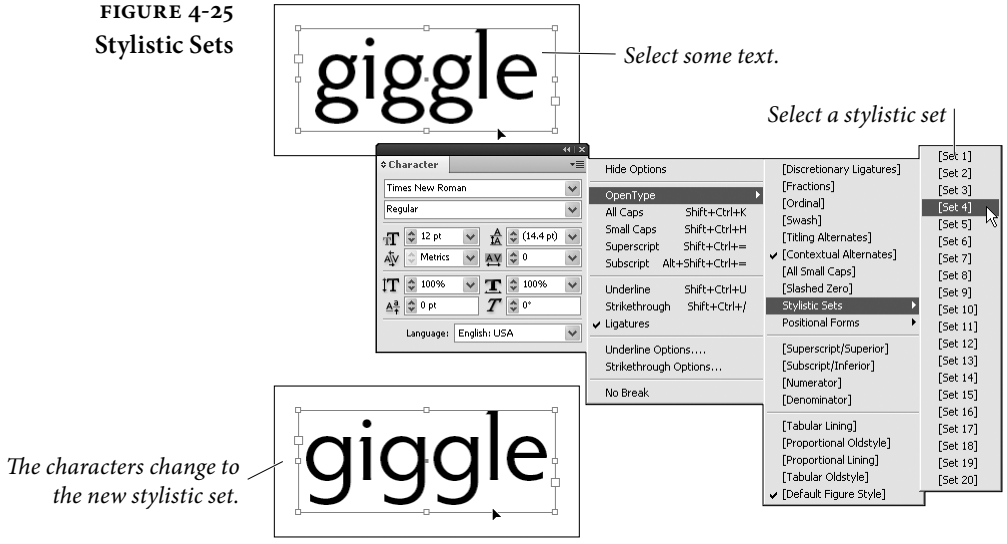


FIGURE 4-25
Stylistic Sets

Positional Forms. In some languages, characters change depending on their position in a word—for example, in Hebrew, the "mem" character changes from מ to ם when its at the end of a word.

InDesign uses the General positional form—which uses the normal glyph. If you choose Automatic Form, InDesign changes the character depending on its position in the word. You can override the form by choosing Initial, Medial, Final, or Isolated Form. It's hard to find a font in which this feature does much of anything.

Raised and Lowered Characters

Typesetting a treatise on Einstein's theory of relativity? If so, you'll be mighty happy about InDesign's ability to use true superscripts and subscripts instead of the faked scaled versions that you get with the Superscript and Subscript features in the Character panel's menu. You have four choices in the OpenType submenu (each one is mutually exclusive of the others):

- Superscript/Superior
- Subscript/Inferior

- Numerator
- Denominator

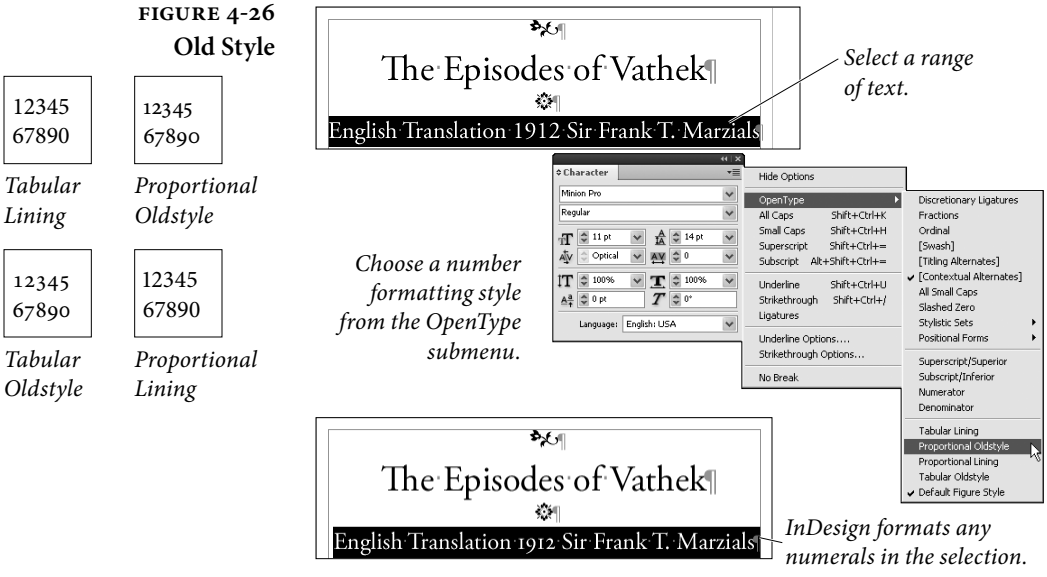
However, note that most OpenType fonts only have a small set of characters designed to be superscript or subscript, so you can't set any and all characters you want in these styles. For example, if you set the word "turkey" to Superscript/Superior style, only every other character changes. In some cases you'll get the same result when you choose Denominator or Subscript/Inferior.

Formatting Numerals

We like "old style" numerals (you know, the kind with descenders: 1234567890) better than full-height "lining figures" (1234567890), and we've always gotten them by changing the font of the characters to an "expert" version of whatever font we were using (if one was available). So we were very happy to see that there are four different ways InDesign can format numerals: Proportional Oldstyle, Tabular Oldstyle, Proportional Lining, Tabular Lining (see Figure 4-26).

Tabular Lining works well for financial tables (such as those found in an annual report), because numbers have equal widths and align from one line to the next. If you choose Tabular Oldstyle from the OpenType submenu, the numerals line up, but InDesign uses old style characters. Proportional Lining numerals are all the same height, but vary in width. David prefers this style for everything other than tables, especially when interspersing numbers and uppercase characters. Ole would rather use Proportional Oldstyle, which uses old style figures of varying widths.

FIGURE 4-26
Old Style



The last OpenType numeral formatting option is Default Figure Style, which applies the figure style defined as the default by the type designer (so the effect varies from font to font).

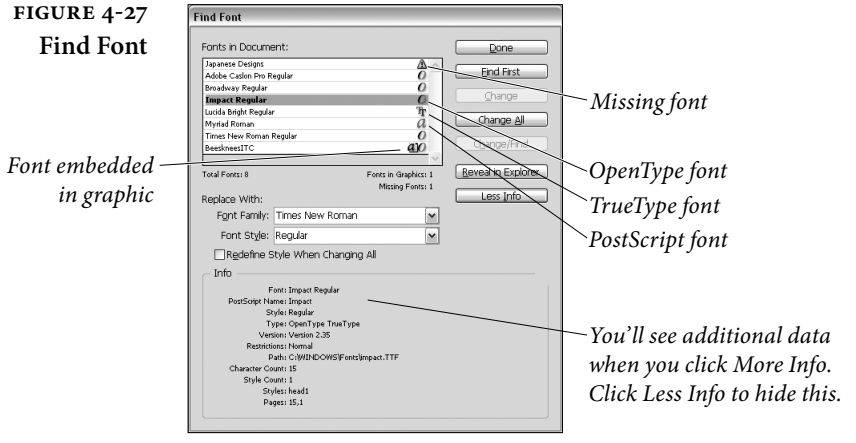
Find Font

The Find Font dialog box (choose Find Font from the Type menu) displays a list of every font that appears somewhere on a document page—including on master pages and in linked PDF or EPS graphics (see Figure 4-27). It does not list fonts that are defined in paragraph or character styles that aren't actually applied to text. If you click the More Info button, the dialog box displays more information about each font you select, including the pages where the font is used, which styles include this font, how many text characters appear in this font, and the version of the font. (There is often more than one version of the same font, each with its own number, just like other software.) Note that showing More Info can slow down the Find Font dialog box significantly, so we often leave this closed.

If you're not sure where a font is living on your hard drive, the Find Font dialog comes to the rescue: Not only is the path to the font listed in More Info, but you can click Reveal in Finder (or Reveal in Explorer in Windows) to open the folder that contains the font.

Replacing Fonts. It's a good idea to visit Find Font every now and again, and especially before finishing your job. We often find rogue fonts sneaking in to documents when we import or copy and paste text from Word or some other document. For example, as we type this, we checked and found that Times New Roman is in this document

FIGURE 4-27
Find Font



for some reason. More Info tells us that it's applied to 36 characters on two different pages. Fortunately, the rest of the Find Font dialog box acts like the Find/Change dialog box, so we can quickly rid ourselves of this aberration.

To replace that incorrectly-styled text, select the font from the list and click Change, Change All, or Change/Find.

If you believe the errant font is actually inside a character or paragraph style definition, then turn on the Redefine Style When Changing All option *before* you click Change All. Otherwise, you'll change the font on your pages, but the font will still be lurking inside the style, just waiting to surprise you again when you least expect it.

By the way, sometimes you'll find that Find Font lists a font as being used in your document but Find Next won't find it, and More Info tells you that there are zero characters that have this font applied to it. This happens when the font is applied only to automatic bullets or numbering (see "Bullets and Numbering," later in this chapter). Find Font will also tell you a font exists when it really doesn't if you have an empty frame that used to contain text in that font—just another good reason not to leave empty frames lying around.

Filling and Stroking Characters

InDesign can fill or stroke text as it can any other path. Once you've selected text, you can set the fill color, stroke color, stroke weight, stroke type, and stroke alignment (see Figure 4-28). The Control panel includes Fill and Stroke boxes for easy color swatch selection.

You can apply gradients to the fill and stroke of the type without converting the type to outlines. However, while gradients are easy to apply, it's not always easy to get the effect you're looking for, because gradients are based on the bounds of the text frame. If you want to change the gradient, select the text and drag the Gradient Swatch tool over it. (See Chapter 5, "Drawing," for more on gradients.)

Paragraph Formatting

What makes a paragraph a paragraph? InDesign's definition is simple—a paragraph is any string of characters that ends with a carriage return. When you apply paragraph formatting, the formatting applies to all of the characters in the paragraph. Paragraph alignment, indents, tabs, spacing, and hyphenation settings are all examples of paragraph formatting.

FIGURE 4-28
Character Fill and Stroke

Select an unlinked text frame using the Selection tool, then click the Formatting Affects Text button.

You can also click the Formatting Affects Text button in the Swatches panel.

You can also select characters using the Type tool, then apply a fill and/or stroke to the text using the same controls you use to apply a fill or stroke to any path.

Format the text using any of the fill and stroke formatting tools. In this example, we used the Swatches panel to apply a tint to the fill and stroke of the text, and then used the Stroke panel to set the stroke weight.

You can control the stroke alignment of the stroke. This stroke is center aligned; the one to the right is aligned to the outside of the stroke.

Note that the fill retains the shape of the character as you increase stroke weight. This works because InDesign strokes the characters and then fills them.

You don't have to select all of the text in a paragraph to apply paragraph formatting—all you need to do is click the Type tool in the paragraph. To select more than one paragraph, drag the cursor through the paragraphs you want to format. The selection doesn't have to include all of the text, it only has to *touch* each paragraph.

If what you're trying to do, however, is apply character formatting (such as font or point size) to all of the characters in the paragraph, you should quadruple-click (or triple-click, if you've turned off the Triple Click to Select a Line option in the Type panel of the Preferences dialog box) the paragraph with the Type tool—that way, you'll select all of the characters, including the carriage return character. (Note that you can force a line break without creating a new paragraph—called a "soft return"—by typing Shift-Return/Shift-Enter.)

You can find all of InDesign's paragraph formatting features in the Paragraph panel. To display the Paragraph panel, press Command-Option-T/Ctrl-Alt-T. These features are duplicated in the Control panel—if the Control panel is displaying character formatting, then click the panel's Paragraph Formatting Controls button or press Command-Option-7/Ctrl-Alt-7 to switch to paragraph formatting.

Alignment Click the alignment buttons at the top of the Paragraph panel or in the Control panel to set the alignment of the selected paragraphs (see Figure 4-29).

InDesign supports the usual set of paragraph alignments—left aligned (also known as "rag right"), right aligned (also known as "rag left"), centered, and justified, but also adds a couple of variations on the justified alignment you might not be familiar with.

In addition to the standard "justified" alignment, which treats the last line of the paragraph as if it were left aligned, InDesign offers the force justified, right justified, and center justified alignments. These each tell InDesign to treat the last line of the paragraph differently. When you force justify the text, the last line is spread out all the way to the right margin, even if it's only a single word. In some cases, when the Paragraph Composer is turned on (see "Multi-line Composition," later in this chapter), turning on force justify actually reflows the paragraph significantly.

Right justified and center justified treat the last line as right aligned and center aligned, respectively. In the old days of typesetting, these alignments were known as "quad right" and "quad center."

Finally, the Align Towards Spine and Align Away from Spine options. The former aligns the text to the spine and leaves the outside of the text ragged; the latter does the opposite.

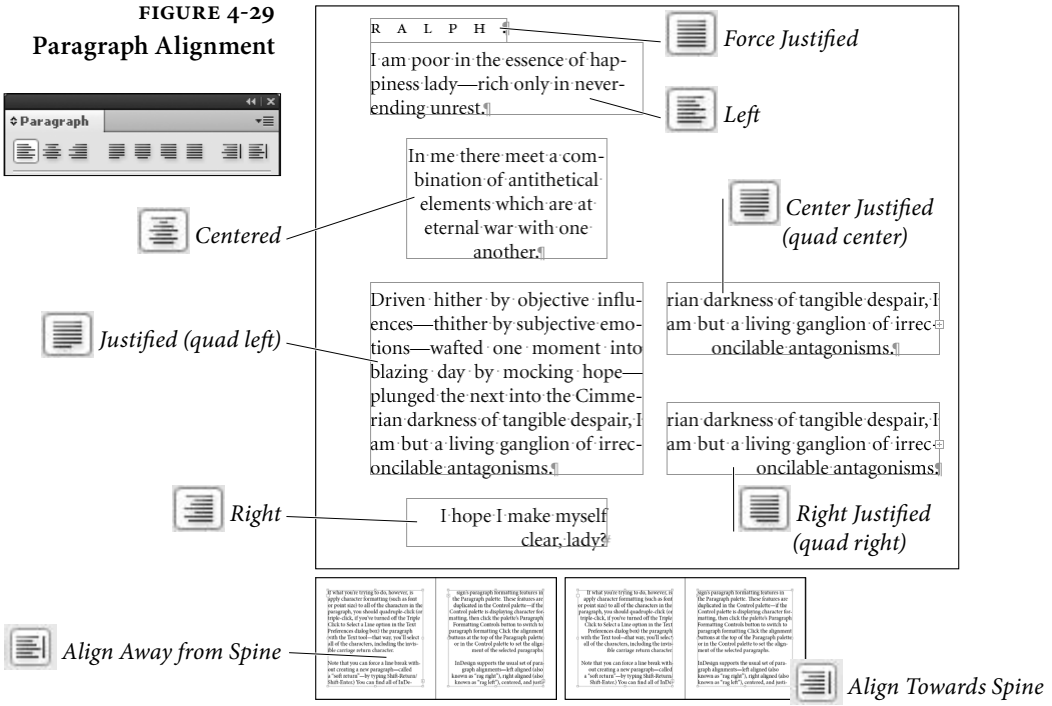


FIGURE 4-29
Paragraph Alignment

Indents

Paragraphs can be indented using the Left Indent and Right Indent fields in the Paragraph or Control panel (see Figure 4-30). You can enter values from zero (0) to 720 picas in these fields, but you can't enter negative numbers to make the edges of the paragraph "hang" outside the edges of the column or text frame.

Note that the left and right indents are always added to the text inset, as specified in the Text Frame Options dialog box. If you have a left inset of 6 points and a left indent of 12 points, then the left edge of the paragraph will sit 18 points from the edge of the frame.

There are also two special indents, called First Line Left Indent and Last Line Right Indent. The first applies to the first line of the paragraph alone—the value you enter in the First Line Left Indent field sets the distance between the first line indent and the left indent. The First Line indent may be positive or negative, but cannot be a negative number greater than the left indent (see Figure 4-31). You should *never* create an indent by typing five spaces at the beginning of a paragraph to indent; instead, use First Line indent.

How large your First Line indent should be depends on your design and on the typeface you're working with. Typically, the larger the x-height of the font, the larger first-line indent you should use. Book designers often use a one- or two-em indent, so in an 11-point type, the indent might be 11 or 22 points.

The Last Line Right Indent lets you set the position for the last line of text in a paragraph. The most common use for this is to apply a large Right Indent and then a negative Last Line Right Indent (so that the last line sticks out past the rest of the paragraph, as in many

FIGURE 4-30
Paragraph Indents

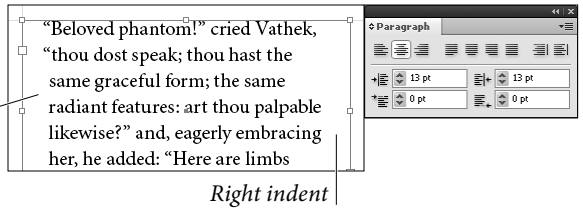
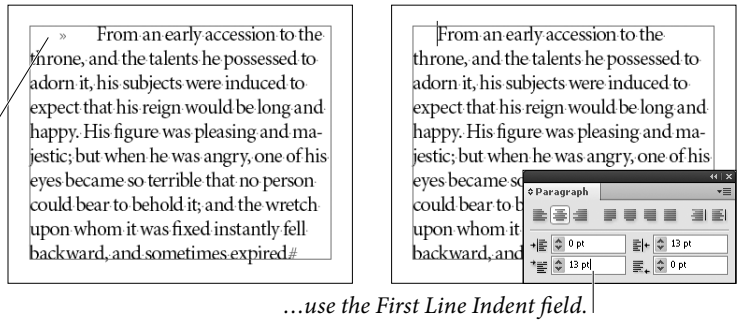


FIGURE 4-31
First Line Indent



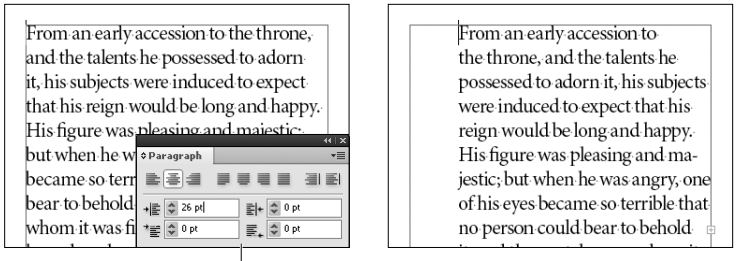
menu designs). Another use might be to set the position of the final line when using Justify All Lines (forced justification).

To change an indent value, select a paragraph and then do one of the following things:

- Display the Paragraph or Control panel, then enter a value in the First Line Left Indent, Left Indent, Right Indent, and/or the Last Line Right Indent fields (see Figure 4-32).
- Display the Tabs panel (press Command-Shift-T/Ctrl-Shift-T), and drag one of the indent icons (see Figure 4-33).

FIGURE 4-32
Setting an Indent

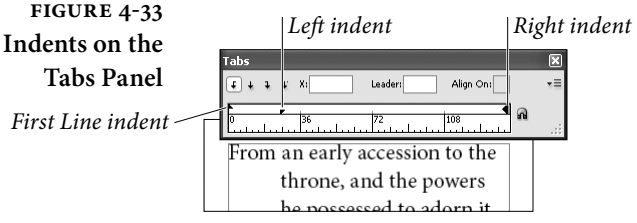
Click the Type tool in the paragraph you want to format.



Enter values in the Left, Right, First, or Last fields.

InDesign applies the indents you've specified.

FIGURE 4-33
Indents on the Tabs Panel



Creating a Hanging Indent

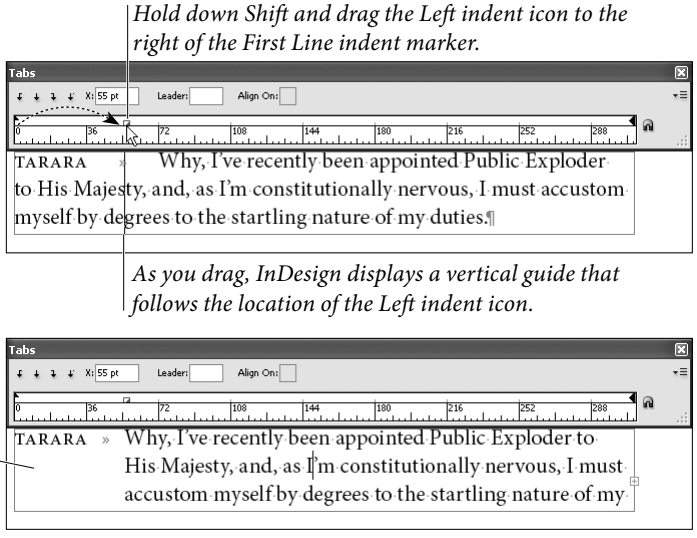
A hanging indent is one in which the first line of a paragraph "sticks out" to the left of the rest of the paragraph—often used in numbered or bulleted lists. Use hanging indents, rather than breaking and indenting each line using carriage returns and tabs—you'll thank yourself for it later, when you need to edit the text or change the width of the text block.

There are two basic methods for creating a hanging indent. First, you can apply a positive Left Indent and a negative First Line Left Indent with either the Tabs panel (see Figure 4-34) or the Paragraph or Control panel. Either way, there's no need to set a tab stop because InDesign assumes the left indent is the first tab stop.

Here's another way to create a hanging indent: Type the text you want to "hang," followed by a tab character. With the text cursor immediately after the tab character, press Command-\ or Ctrl-\ (backslash). This is the keyboard shortcut for the Indent to Here

FIGURE 4-34
Setting a Hanging Indent

Click the Type tool in a paragraph, then press Command-Shift-T/ Ctrl-Shift-T to display the Tabs panel.



character (you can also get this character from the Other submenu in the Insert Special Character submenu, in either the Type menu or the context menu). This invisible character causes the rest of the lines in a paragraph to indent to this place. If you want to delete it, you can place the cursor after it (since it's invisible and has no width, you might have to use the arrow keys to position it) and then press Delete.

While the Indent to Here character is easy to type, we like using the negative First Line indent trick more because we can use it in a paragraph style.

Tabs

Tabs come to desktop typesetting from typewriters, by way of word processing (with a stopover along the way at the Linotype machine). They solve a problem that didn't exist in hand-set metal type—namely, how do you position characters at precise locations in a line of type when you can't simply slide them into place with your finger?

There are two methods of controlling the horizontal position of text in a line. First, you can use space characters—word spaces, thin spaces, en spaces, and em spaces. This method places characters at *relative* positions in the line—where they appear depends on the width of the spaces and of the other characters in the line. Tabs, by contrast, provide *absolute* position on the line—a tab stop set at 6 picas will remain at that position, regardless of the content of the line.

Before we go any further, we'd better make sure we're using the same terminology. *Tab stops* are formatting attributes of paragraphs. *Tab characters* are what InDesign enters in a line of text when you press the Tab key. Tab characters push text around in a line; tab stops determine the effect of the tab characters. Each tab stop has

a position (relative to the left edge of the text frame), an alignment (which specifies the composition of the text following a tab character), and, potentially, a leader (a tab leader is a series of repeated characters spanning the distance from beginning of the tab character to the beginning of the following text). Put tab stops and tab characters together, and you get *tabs*, the feature.

A Little Tab Dogma. Look. We try to be reasonable. We try not to insist that everyone work the way that we do, or that our way of doing things is necessarily the best way (in fact, we sometimes know it's not). But tabs are different—if you don't do it our way, you'll be causing yourself needless pain. Let's review the rules:

- Use tabs, not spaces, to move text to a specific position in a line.
- Use a First Line indent, not a tab, when you want to indent the first line of a paragraph.
- Do not force lines to break by entering tab characters (or multiple tab characters) at the end of a line! If you do, you'll find tab characters creeping back into the text as editing changes force text recomposition. To break a line without entering a carriage return, use the "soft return" (press Shift-Return/Shift-Enter).
- Don't use multiple tab characters when you can use a single tab character and an appropriately positioned tab stop. While there are some cases where you'll have to break this rule, putting two or more tab characters in a row should be the exception.

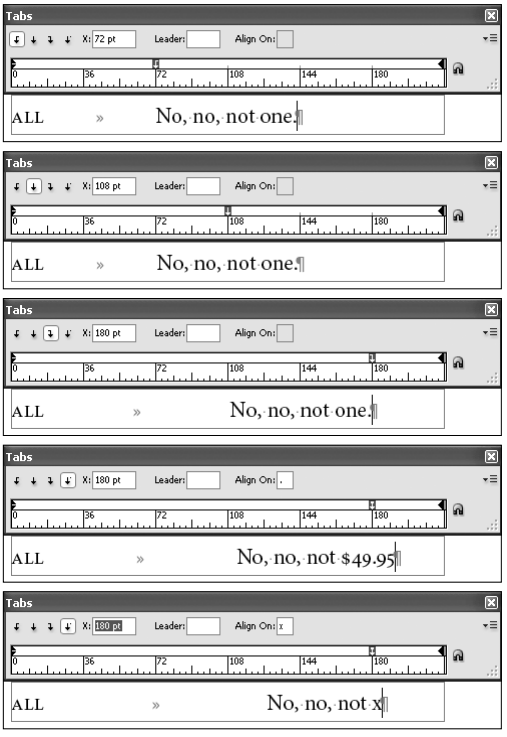
Types of Tab Stops

InDesign features four types of tab stops (see Figure 4-35).

Left, Right, and Centered Tab Stops. InDesign's left, right, and centered tab stops are the same as the basic tab stops you'll find in any word processor.

- Left tab stops push text following a tab character to a specific horizontal location in a column, and then align the text to the left of the tab stop position.
- Right tab stops push text to a location and then align the text to the right of the tab stop position.
- Centered tab stops center a line of text at the point at which you've set the tab stop.

FIGURE 4-35
Tab Stop Alignment



Decimal Tab Stops. Decimal tab stops push text following a tab character so that any decimal point you've entered in the text aligns with the point at which you set the tab stop.

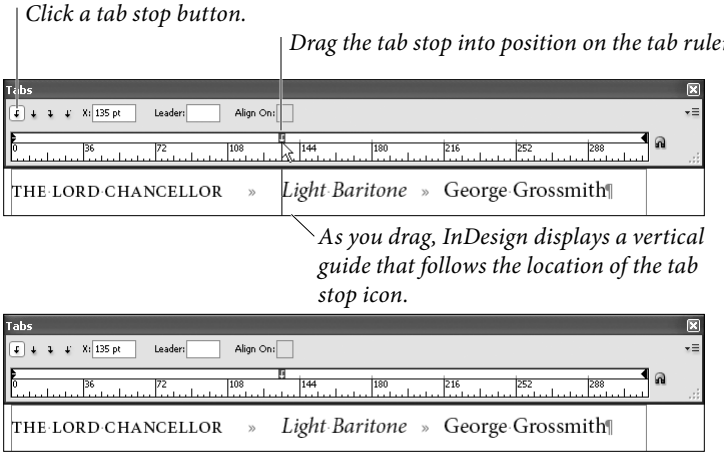
Actually, the Decimal tab stop is an "align to any character you want" tab stop. Type the character you're trying to align in the Align On field of the Tabs panel. For example, lets say you have a column of item numbers, some with asterisks. You can make the asterisks hang out to the right by typing an asterisk character in the Align On field. If the Align On character doesn't appear in the paragraph, InDesign treats the decimal tab stop as a right tab stop.

Setting Tab Stops

To set a tab stop, follow these steps (see Figure 4-36).

1. If you haven't already entered tab characters in the text, enter them.
2. Select the paragraph(s) you want to format.
3. Display the Tabs panel (press Command-Shift-T/Ctrl-Shift-T), then click the Magnet button to snap the Tabs panel into position at the top of the text frame (if possible).

FIGURE 4-36
Setting a Tab Stop



4. Click in the tab ruler and drag. As you drag, the X field shows you the position of the tab icon (relative to the left edge of the text frame). Then click one of the tab stop alignment buttons to determine the type of the tab stop.

You can also add a tab stop at a specific location on the tab ruler. To do this, enter the position you want in the X field in the Tabs panel and then press Enter. InDesign adds the tab stop.

Removing Tab Stops. To remove a tab stop, drag the tab stop icon off the tab ruler. Note that this doesn't remove any tab characters you've typed in your text, though it does make them behave differently (because you've taken away their tab stop).

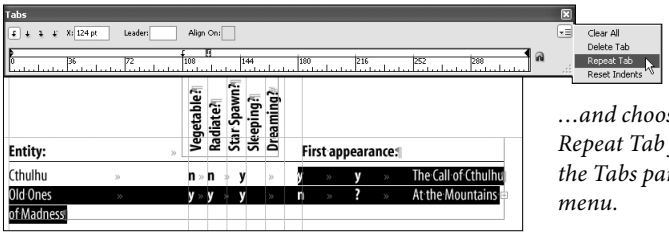
Editing Tab Stops. To change a tab stop's position, drag the tab stop on the tab ruler. Alternatively, you can select the tab stop (click on it), then enter a new value in the x field or give it a leader. Don't forget that if you want to move the tab stop by a specific amount, you can add a + or – character after the value that appears in the x field and then type the amount you want to move it ("+14mm").

To change a tab stop's alignment (from left to decimal, for instance), select the tab stop on the tab ruler and then click the tab stop button corresponding to the alignment you want. Or you can Option/Alt-click on the tab stop to cycle through the alignment types.

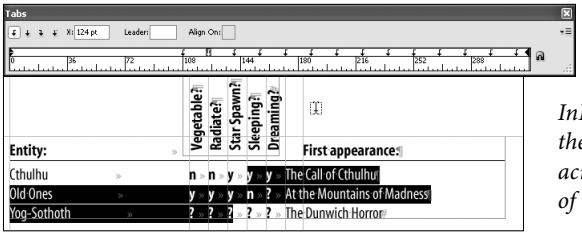
Repeating Tab Stops. To create a series of tab stops spaced an equal distance apart, select a tab stop on the tab ruler and choose Repeat Tab from the Tabs panel menu (see Figure 4-37). InDesign repeats the tab across the width of the current column. The distance between

FIGURE 4-37
Repeating a Tab Stop

Select the tab stop icon you want to repeat…



…and choose Repeat Tab from the Tabs panel menu.



InDesign repeats the tab stop across the width of the tab ruler.

the new tab stops is equal to the distance between the tab stop you selected and the previous tab stop (or indent) in the column. InDesign also deletes all the tab stops that were already to the right of the tab stop you clicked (which can be frustrating if you've placed tab stops there and weren't expecting them to disappear).

Working with Tab Leaders. A tab leader is a series of repeated characters that fill the area taken up by the tab character (see Figure 4-38). The most common tab leader character is a period—think of all of the "dot" leaders you've seen in tables of contents.

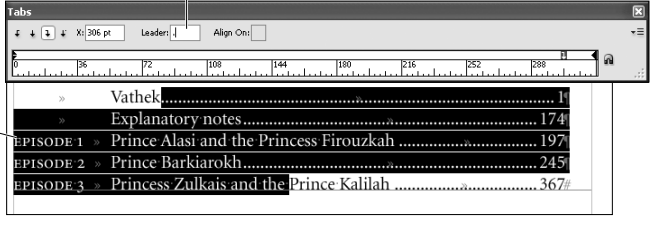
Characters in a tab leader are not spaced in the same fashion as other characters—if they were, the characters in tab leaders on successive lines would not align with each other. That would be ugly. Instead, characters in a tab leader are monospaced—positioned as if on an invisible grid. This means you'll see different amounts of space between the last character of text preceding a tab leader and the first tab leader. It's a small price to pay.

FIGURE 4-38
Applying a Tab Leader

Select some text.

…and InDesign applies a tab leader to the selected tab stop.

Select a tab stop and enter the character or characters you want to use for the tab leader in the Leader field. Press Return/Enter…



In InDesign, you can format the characters in a tab leader by selecting the tab character and applying formatting, just as you would any other character. For instance, dotted tab leaders typically look like a bunch of periods. To make them look more like traditional dot leaders, add a space after the period (in the Leader field), then select the tab character and reduce its size slightly.

Right-aligned Tabs. Setting a tab stop precisely at the right margin can be a bother; it's an even bigger bother when your art director says, "make that column narrower." Instead of using tab stops, try using a right-aligned tab character, which you can enter by pressing Shift-Tab (or add with the Insert Special Character submenu in the Type menu). The text that follows the right-aligned tab character always aligns with the right margin, even when you change the right indent or the width of the text frame.

The right aligned tab picks up the tab leader settings from the last tab stop in the line.

Adding Space Before and After Paragraphs

When you want to add extra space between paragraphs, don't use carriage returns (not even one). If you do, you're certain to end up with unwanted carriage returns at the tops of text frames when text recomposes due to editing or formatting changes. Instead of typing carriage returns, use the Space Before and Space After fields in the Paragraph or Control panel. When you add space using these controls, InDesign removes the space when the paragraph falls at the top of a text frame (see Figure 4-39). If you need to add space before a paragraph at the top of a text frame, use First Baseline offset (see Chapter 3, "Text").

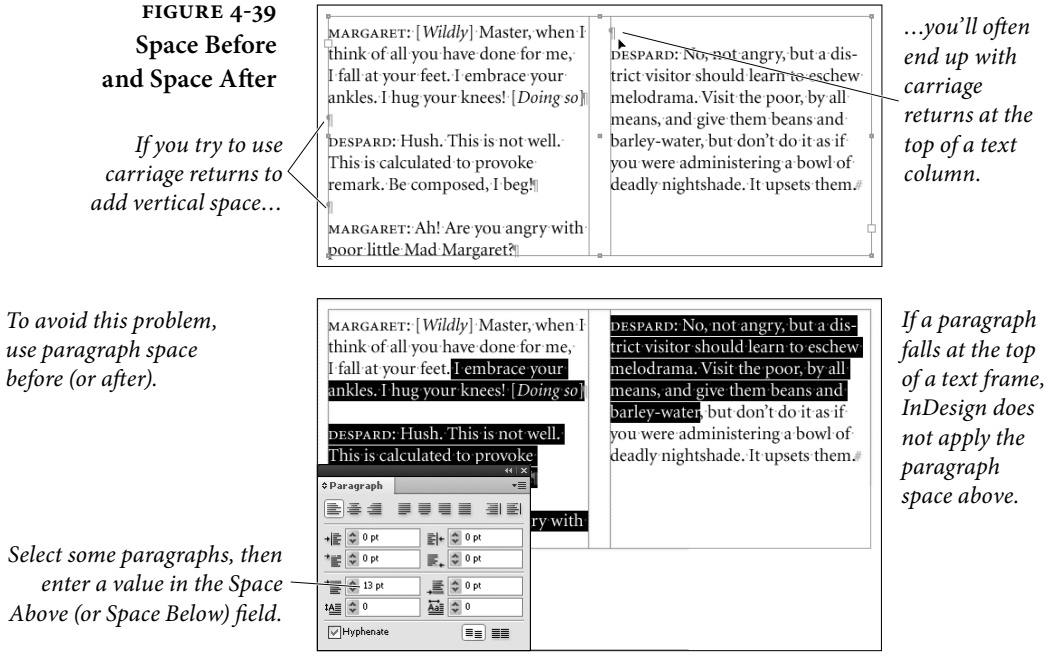
In addition, adding an exact amount of space is easier when you use the Paragraph or Control panel. Want to add four picas of vertical space above the paragraph? Enter it in the Space Before field. There's no need to guess how many carriage returns it would take to make up that vertical distance.

Align to Grid

When you have more than one column of text on a page, it's important that the baselines of the text line up across the columns. The leading should be consistent with an underlying "leading grid"—an invisible set of rules for where the baselines of text should lay. Many designers even work with leading grids on pages with a single column.

Unfortunately, in most page designs, you'll find elements that have to have leading values that differ from the leading applied to the body text. Inline graphics, paragraph rules, and headings are all examples of the sort of elements we're talking about. When one of

FIGURE 4-39
Space Before and Space After



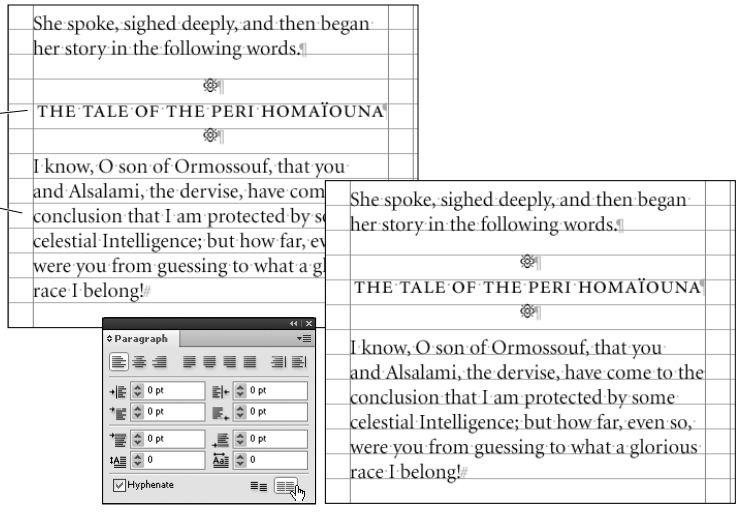
these elements appears in a column of text, the leading of the lines in that column gets thrown off.

You need to compensate for leading variations inside a column of text. "Leading creep," the misalignment of baselines in adjacent text columns, is one of the hallmarks of amateur typesetting.

While you could adjust the space above and below such intrusions, there's an easier way: use InDesign's Align to Baseline Grid. Select a paragraph and click the Align to Baseline Grid button in the Paragraph panel, and InDesign forces the baselines of the lines in the paragraph onto the baseline grid (see Figure 4-40). You can change the leading and position of the document baseline grid in the Grids pane of the Preferences dialog box. To see this grid, select Show Baseline Grid from the Grids & Guides submenu, under the View menu.

Frame-based Baseline Grids. The baseline grid can also be calculated for individual text frames. To activate a custom baseline grid, select the text frame and press Command-B/Ctrl-B to display the Text Frame Options dialog box. Click the Baseline Options tab, and then turn on the Use Custom Baseline Grid option. Use the controls to set up your custom baseline grid (see Figure 4-41). When you specify a custom grid, the Align to Grid option aligns the text baselines with the baseline grid applied to the text frame, rather than to the document baseline grid.

FIGURE 4-40
Align to Grid



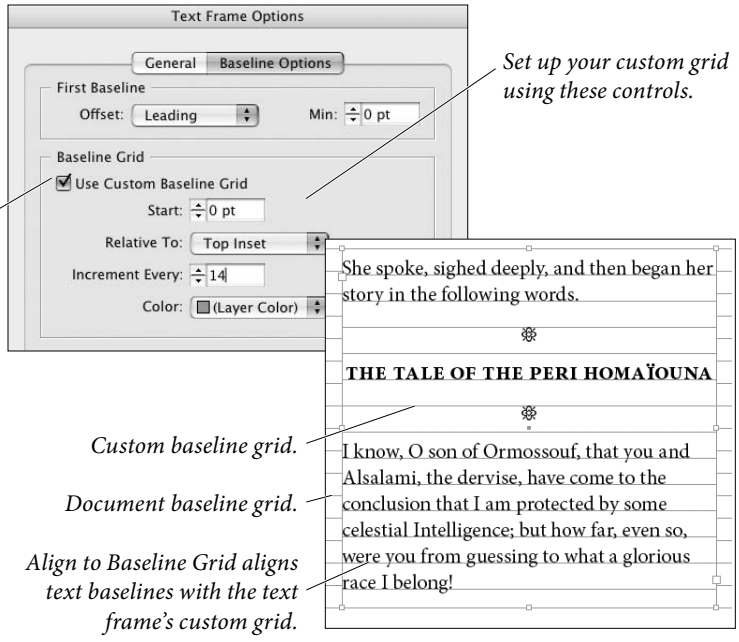
This is all very pretty…

…but it throws the leading of the following paragraph off of the leading grid.

To fix this problem, select the paragraph and click the Align Baseline to Grid button.

InDesign snaps the baselines of the text in the paragraph to the baseline grid.

FIGURE 4-41
Custom Baseline Grid



To set up a custom baseline grid for a text frame, select the frame, then open the Text Frame Options dialog box . Click the Baseline Options tab, then turn on the Use Custom Baseline Grid option.

Set up your custom grid using these controls.

Custom baseline grid.

Document baseline grid.

Align to Baseline Grid aligns text baselines with the text frame's custom grid.

Why We Rarely Use Align to Baseline. While there's no doubt that a careful study and practice of baseline grids can make your documents better looking, we rarely use the Align to Baseline Grid feature. The reason: you can get the same result by making sure your leading, Space Before, and Space After always add up to an even multiple of the leading value.

For example, if your body text has 15-point leading, then make sure your headings also have 15- or 30-point leading. If you use Space Before or Space After, make sure those values are set to a multiple of 15, such as: 15, 30, or 45 points. Finally, snap the tops of your frame to the baseline grid and set the First Baseline setting to Leading, and you can't go wrong.

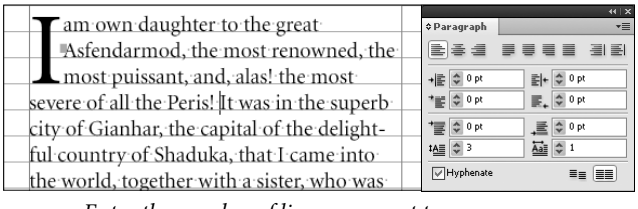
Only Align First Line to Grid. Often, sidebars in magazines or newsletters are set in a different font and leading than the main body text, and they're placed in their own text frame. You can make the first baseline of that sidebar align with the leading grid by using the Only Align First Line to Grid feature. This forces the first line of a selected paragraph to snap to the baseline grid, but then leaves the rest of the paragraph alone. To align the first baseline of a paragraph to the baseline grid, first align the whole paragraph to the baseline grid and then choose Only Align First Line to Grid from the Paragraph or Control panel menu.

Drop Caps

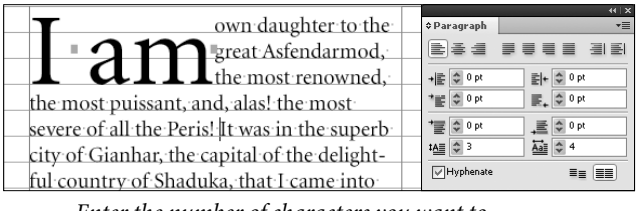
Drop caps are a paragraph-level attribute in InDesign (as they are in QuarkXPress). To apply a drop cap to a paragraph, enter a value in the Number of Lines field of the Paragraph or Control panel (this sets both the baseline shift and the point size of the drop cap). To apply the drop cap formatting to more than one character, enter a number in the Number of Characters field. InDesign enlarges the characters you specified and shifts their baseline down according to the value you entered in the Number of Lines field (see Figure 4-42).

FIGURE 4-42
Drop Caps

Select a paragraph.



Enter the number of lines you want to "drop" the initial character(s).



Enter the number of characters you want to apply the drop cap format to, if necessary.

You can also make an initial cap that drops down *and* raises up by selecting the drop cap character (or characters) and increasing the point size. To add or remove space between the drop cap and the characters that follow it, place the cursor after the drop cap and adjust the Kerning value (see "Kerning," earlier in this chapter). The only good way to get your text to follow the shape of a drop cap is to convert the character to an outline and either place that outline as frame outside the text frame or as an anchored frame with text wrap.

If you find yourself often applying character formatting to your drop caps—changing size, font, color, *etc.*—then you should create a new character style that reflects that formatting, choose Drop Caps and Nested Styles from the Control panel menu (or press Command-Option-R/Ctrl-Alt-R), and choose your character style from the Character Style pop-up menu. Of course, you can also define this as part of your paragraph style (see "Styles," later in this chapter).

The Drop Caps and Nested Styles dialog box also offers two other drop cap options: Align Left Edge and Scale Descenders. The former moves the drop cap so that its left edge is placed exactly at the left edge of the left indent—this tends to be more important with very large drop caps. The latter only takes effect when the drop cap has a descender (for example, the letter "Q" or a lower-case "p"); the whole drop cap is cleverly scaled so that the descender avoids the line below.

Type in the Margin. In InDesign, the edges of text frames are usually inviolable (apart from the adjustments applied by optical margin alignment). There's no margin release (anybody still remember typewriters?), no handy command for moving one line a bit over the edge. Or is there? Instead of a single-character drop cap, specify a two-character drop cap. Add a space to the left of the first character in the paragraph—if your paragraph is justified, this should be a space that doesn't get wider, such as an en space (Command-Shift-N/Ctrl-Shift-N). Place the cursor between the space and the drop cap and apply negative kerning until the left edge of the character moves outside of the text frame. Note, also, that using optical margin alignment may provide the effect you're looking for without all of the extra work.

Nested Styles

When we look at the formatting in our documents, we see patterns. In this book, for example, a paragraph containing a run-in heading starts with our "run-in heading" character style and then reverts to the formatting of our body text. A period separates the heading from the body text. To apply this formatting, we have to select the first sentence and apply the character style. Wouldn't it be nice if we could tell our page-layout application to apply that pattern for us?

With InDesign's nested styles, we can do just that. Nested styles give you a way to automatically apply character formatting to portions of a paragraph—the first character, the first sentence, or just the third word. Nested styles rely on you first creating a character style; we discuss how to do this later in this chapter. You might want to skip forward, read that section, and then return to this explanation.

Nested styles are perfect for automatically applying a style to a drop cap, a run-in heading (where the first sentence is styled differently from the rest of the paragraph), or any structured paragraph. Catalogs, for example, often have structured paragraphs—such as a paragraph that contains an item number followed by a title, followed by a description, followed by a price. With nested styles, you can tell InDesign to apply a different character style to each element.

You can apply a nested style as local formatting, but it's generally better to define a nested style as part of a paragraph style. To apply a nested style to one or more selected paragraphs in a story, choose Drop Caps and Nested Styles from the Paragraph or Control panel menu (or press Command-Option-R/Ctrl-Alt-R). We'll discuss how to define a paragraph style later in this chapter.

The Drop Caps and Nested Styles dialog box contains two sections: formatting for drop caps and formatting for paragraphs.

Drop Caps. Earlier in this chapter, we discussed the process of applying a drop cap to paragraph—the Drop Caps section of this dialog box is an alternate way to do the same thing.

Many designs specify that the first line of text following a drop cap be formatted a particular way—small caps are quite commonly used. With nested styles, you can accomplish this easily by adding a forced line break, as shown in Figure 4-43.

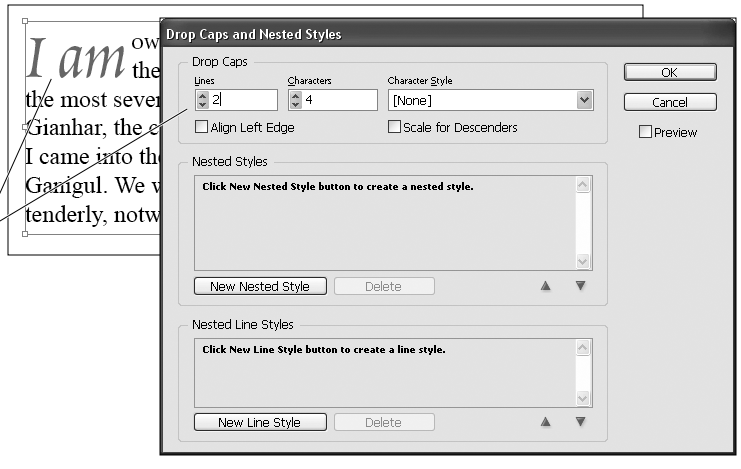


FIGURE 4-43
Drop Caps and Nested Styles

By including the drop cap as part of the paragraph's nested style definition, we can automatically apply a character style to the drop cap (which is a good thing to do, in any case).

Nested Styles. The Nested Styles section is where you build a set of rules for InDesign to follow while formatting a paragraph. Here's how you make a nested style (see Figure 4-44).

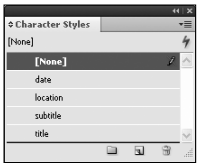
1. Display the Drop Cap and Nested Style dialog box (choose Drop Caps and Nested Styles from the Paragraph panel menu or the Control panel menu). Click the New Nested Style button.
2. Select the character style you want to apply from the first pop-up menu. Of course, you have to have defined at least one character style for this to work.
3. To activate the second option, click the word "through." Select either "up to" or "through" from this pop-up menu. Choose "through" if you want to apply the style up to *and including* a given character, or "up to" to apply the style to the text but *not* to the delimiting character.
4. Click the setting in the third column to change it from "1" to some other number, if necessary. If you want to apply your character style "up to the third word," for example, you would change this number to "3."
5. Click the last column to activate the pop-up menu, then enter a delimiter character (or choose one from the pop-up menu). To apply the style up to the first en space in the paragraph, for example, choose En Spaces from the pop-up menu. You can enter any character you want into this field—including many of the find/change metacharacters.
6. If you want another style to follow the one you just made, start at Step 1 again. You can also repeat one or more rules by choosing Repeat from the first pop-up menu, creating a loop.

End Nested Style Here. What if you want to apply a character style to some portion of your paragraph, but there's no obvious "stopping point" you can target? For example, each paragraph may require the style up to a different point. No problem: Just choose End Nested Style Character from the last pop-up menu in Step 5, above. Then place the text cursor at that point in the paragraph and choose End Nested Style Here from the Other submenu in the Insert Special Character submenu (under the Type or context menu). This is an invisible character, so it won't reflow your text. If a paragraph doesn't contain one of these special characters, InDesign applies the character style you specify to the entire paragraph.

FIGURE 4-44
Nested Styles

Thespis, or The Gods Grown Old (26 December 1871; Gaiety Theatre)
Trial by Jury, or A Bachelor's Suit (25 March 1875; Royalty Theatre)
The Sorcerer, or The Love Philtre (7 November 1877; Opera Comique)
H.M.S. Pinafore, or The Lass That Loved a Sailor (May 28, 1878; Opera Comique)
The Pirates of Penzance, or The Slave of Duty (April 2, 1880; Opera Comique)
Patience, or Bunthorne's Bride (April 23, 1881; Opera Comique)
Iolanthe, or The Peer and the Peri (November 25, 1882; Savoy Theatre)
Princess Ida, or Castle Adamant (January 5, 1884; Savoy Theatre)
The Mikado, or The Town of Titipu (March 14, 1885; Savoy Theatre)
Ruddigore, or The Witch's Curse (January 21, 1887; Savoy Theatre)
The Yeomen of the Guard (October 3, 1888; Savoy Theatre)
The Gondoliers, or The King of Barataria (December 7, 1889; Savoy Theatre)
Utopia Limited, or The Flowers of Progress (October 7, 1893; Savoy Theatre; 245 performances)
The Grand Duke, or The Statutory Duel (March 7, 1896; Savoy Theatre)

This text needs to be formatted.



We've created character styles to assist us in formatting the text.

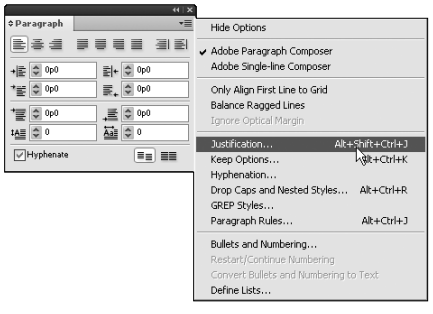
We apologize, in advance, for the complexity of this illustration (which continues on the next page). We can't help it—this stuff is nothing short of magical.

We want to format the text according to the following rules:

1. Apply the "title" style to the text up to the comma.
2. Leave the comma and "or" in the paragraph's default style.
3. Format the subtitle (the text up to the open parenthesis).
4. Format the open parenthesis character using the paragraph's default style.

Example line — Thespis, or The Gods Grown Old (26 December 1871; Gaiety Theatre)¶

5. Format the date (the text up to the semicolon).
6. Format the semicolon character using the paragraph's default style.
7. Apply the "location" character style to the theater name.
8. Format the close parenthesis character using the paragraph's default style.



Rather than work our way through the text and apply character styles manually, we choose Drop Caps and Nested Styles (from the Paragraph panel or the Control panel menu).

InDesign displays the Drop Cap and Nested Styles dialog box.

Click the New Nested Style button. InDesign creates a new nested style. Choose a character style from the first pop-up menu (you can also create a new character style, if necessary).

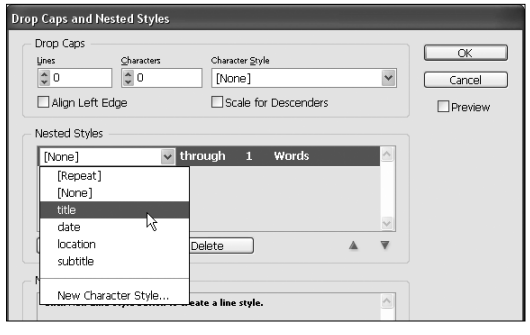


FIGURE 4-44
Applying Nested Styles (continued)

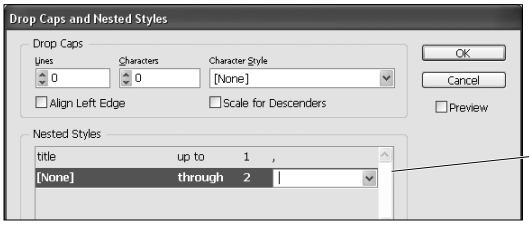
The following pop-up menus set the length of the text style range.

Choose "up to" or "through" from this pop-up menu.

Enter the number of delimiter characters.

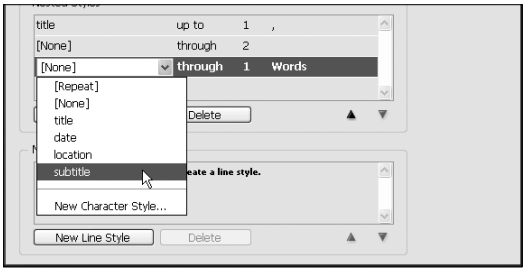
Enter a delimiter character (or choose one of the preset delimiters from the pop-up menu).

Following the title, we want to leave the comma and the word "or" in the default character formatting for the paragraph. Click New Nested Style and leave the Style pop-up menu set to "[None]".



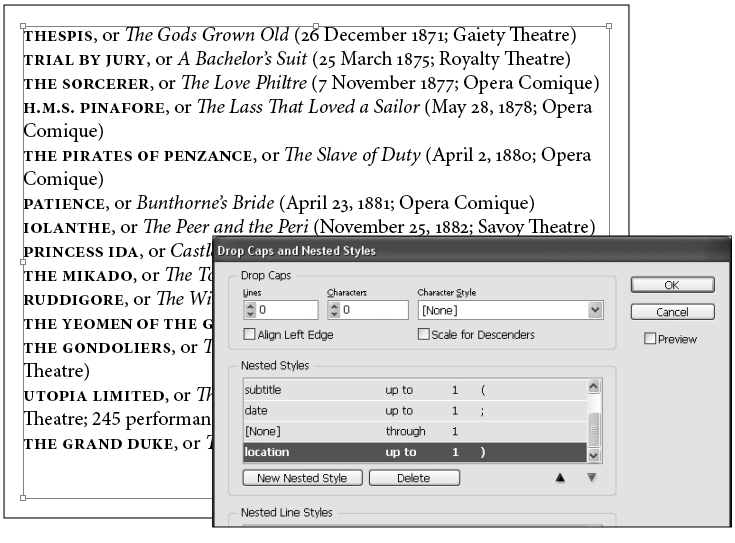
We entered a space here.

At this point, we're ready to set up the formatting for the subtitle. The character at the end of the subtitle text is an open parenthesis, so we enter that character and set the range to "up to."



We create a further six character styles to cover all of the rules we've defined. When we're done, we have formatted all of the text. No selecting, no clicking, and no keyboard shortcuts. This process takes far longer to explain than it does to do.

It's even better when you make the nested styles part of a paragraph style, as we'll demonstrate later in this chapter.



Repeating Nested Styles

Nested styles have a special setting, which appears on the Character Style pop-up menu in the Drop Caps and Nested Styles dialog box: the Repeat option. You can use this option to repeat some or all of the sequence of nested styles you've entered, as shown in Figure 4-45. Nested styles appearing below the Repeat nested style are ignored.

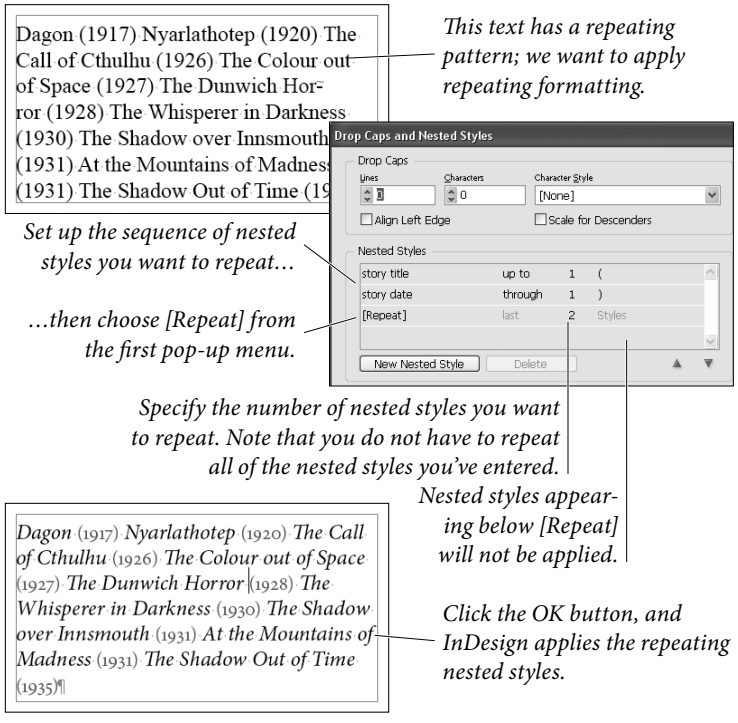


FIGURE 4-45
Repeating a Nested Style

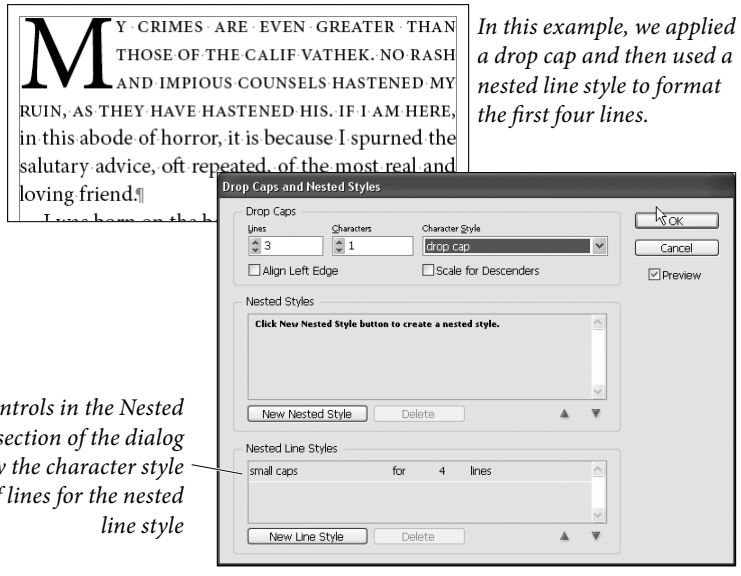
Nested Line Styles

Nested line styles are a special case of a nested style. In a nested line style, the end of a line defines the end of the style. Nested line styles are particularly useful when you want to apply special formatting to the first line of a paragraph, or repeat sequences of line formatting through a paragraph.

To create a nested line style, follow these steps (see Figure 4-46).

1. Select some text, then choose Drop Caps and Nested Styles from the Paragraph panel menu (or from the Control panel menu). InDesign displays the Drop Caps and Nested Styles dialog box.
2. Use the controls in the Nested Line Styles section of the dialog box to specify the character style and number of lines for the nested line style. Like nested styles, nested line styles can repeat.
3. Click the OK button to close the dialog and apply the nested line style(s).

FIGURE 4-46
Nested Line Styles



In this example, we applied a drop cap and then used a nested line style to format the first four lines.

Use the controls in the Nested Line Styles section of the dialog box to specify the character style and number of lines for the nested line style

Nested GREP Styles

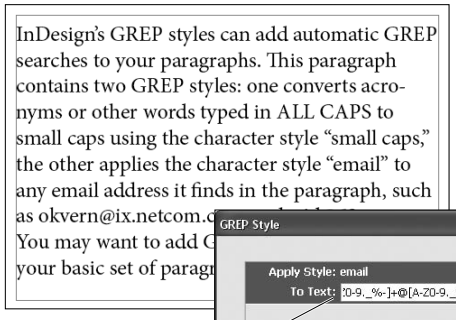
While nested styles make use of ordered sequences of special characters and other text, GREP styles can apply a character style to any text that matches a GREP expression—in any location, repetition, or order in a paragraph. This feature is brilliant, and we think that your basic set of paragraph styles will probably acquire a number of nested GREP styles as soon as you fully understand what it does.

To create a GREP style, follow the steps below (see Figure 4-47).

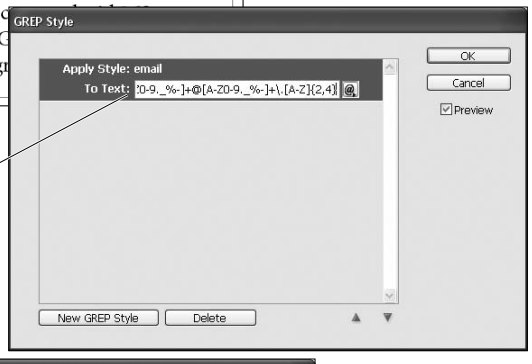
1. Select some text, then choose GREP Styles from the Paragraph panel menu (or from the Control panel menu). InDesign displays the GREP Styles dialog box. It's a good idea to turn on the Preview option—that way, you can see the effect of your GREP style as you construct it.
2. Click the New Grep Style button. InDesign adds a new GREP style.
3. Select a character style from the Apply Style pop-up menu.
4. Enter the GREP expression in the To Text field. As in the GREP panel of the Find/Change dialog box, you can build the GREP expression using the associated pop-up menu. Even if you have Preview turned on, however, InDesign will not apply the GREP expression until you press Return.
5. Click the OK button to close the dialog box and apply the GREP style.

To delete a GREP style, select the style and click the Delete button.

FIGURE 4-47
GREP Styles

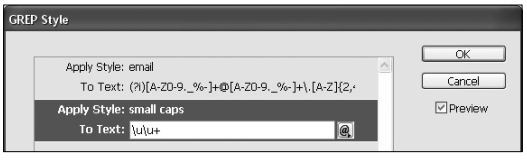


Before GREP styles.

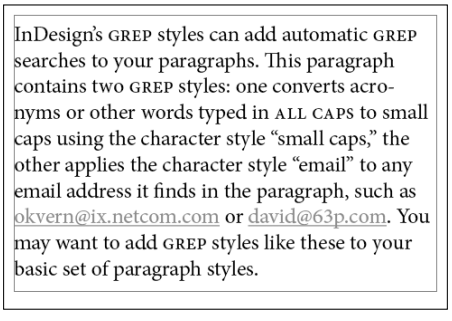


Click the New GREP Style button, select a character style from the Apply Style pop-up menu, and then enter a GREP Expression in the To Text field.

A paragraph can contain an apparently limitless number of GREP styles.



In this example, our GREP styles have formatted words typed in all caps as Open Type All Small Caps, and applied a character style with an underline to the email addresses in the text. No manual formatting was used.



Multi-Line Composition

Composition—the method our desktop publishing program uses to fit text into a line—isn't glamorous. It's not going to be the focus of any glossy magazine advertisement. In fact, most people never consciously notice good or bad composition. We are convinced, however, that readers perceive the difference between well spaced and poorly spaced text. Good spacing not only improves readability, it also conveys an aura of quality to the publication or organization. In short, it's worth caring about.

There are four basic ways to fit text onto a line:

- Controlling the spacing between the letters.
- Controlling the spacing between the words.

- Adjusting the size of the characters themselves.
- Breaking the words at line endings by hyphenating.

If you're serious about type, you already know that a large part of your typesetting time is spent fixing bad line breaks and lines with poor word and letter spacing. In our experience, fully one third of our typesetting and production time in QuarkXPress or other programs is spent "walking the lines"—fixing spacing problems.

Other desktop publishing programs use a "single line composer" to compose lines of text. As the program arranges the characters on each line, it only considers the spacing of that line, which means that adjacent lines may have dramatically different spacing. The greater the variation of letter and word spacing among lines in a paragraph, the harder it is to read (and the less appealing it is to look at).

InDesign, however, has both a single-line composer and a multi-line composer, which can examine an entire paragraph at a time.

How does it work? The multi-line composer (called Adobe Paragraph Composer) creates a list of possible line break points in the lines it examines. It then ranks the different sets of possible break points, considering the effect of each break point on spacing and hyphenation. Finally, it chooses the best of the alternatives. You'd think that this would take a lot of time—but it doesn't. When you use the default settings, you get composition speed that's equal to that of a single-line composition system, and you get better-looking text (see Figure 4-48).

Multi-line composition takes some getting used to because characters *preceding* the cursor will sometimes *move* as you enter or edit text—something you won't see in most other programs. You really can't be certain of the position of the line breaks in a paragraph until you've entered the last word in the paragraph.

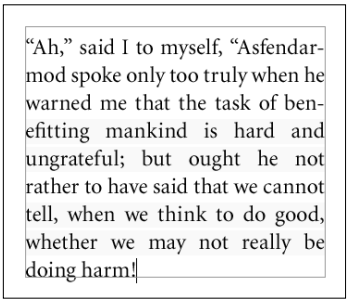
In some rare cases you might want turn the Adobe Paragraph Composer off and exercise manual control over the line breaks in a paragraph—when lines absolutely must break a particular way.

Multi-line composition is on by default; to use the single-line composition method, select a paragraph and choose Adobe Single-line Composer from the Paragraph or Control panel menu (or in the Justification dialog box). To turn multi-line composition back on again for the paragraph, choose Adobe Paragraph Composer.

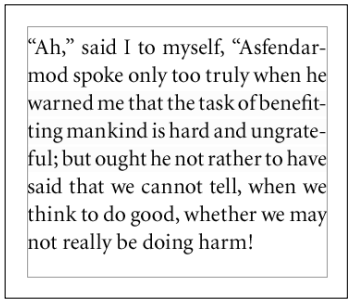
With InDesign CS6, you can also select both single-line and multi-line World Ready composers, which were previously available only in the special InDesign ME version. These options are especially useful for composing text in right-to-left languages.

FIGURE 4-48
Multi-Line Composition

Note the extreme variation in word and letter spacing from line to line in the text composed using the Single-line composer.



Single-line Composer.



Paragraph Composer

Hyphenation Controls

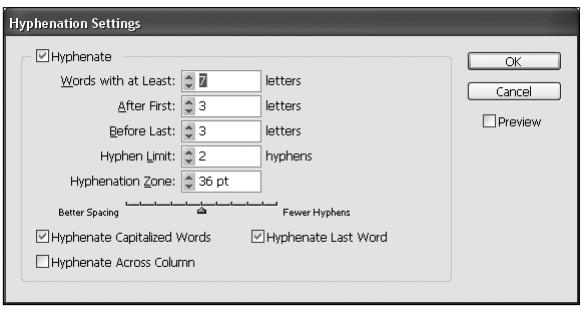
If you're tired of having your favorite page layout program hyphenate the word "image" after the "m," you'll like InDesign's hyphenation controls. To set the hyphenation options for a paragraph, choose Hyphenation from the Paragraph or Control panel's menu. InDesign displays the Hyphenation dialog box (see Figure 4-49). QuarkXPress users are used to having both hyphenation and justification settings in one dialog box; in InDesign they're broken into two. Also, in QuarkXPress, you have to make and save an H&J setting first, and then apply it to a paragraph. In InDesign, you select a paragraph and change its hyphenation and justification settings.

The first checkbox in the Hyphenation Settings dialog box, simply labeled Hyphenate, controls whether the selected paragraph or paragraphs will be hyphenated. This is identical to turning on and off the Hyphenate checkbox in the Paragraph panel. Then there are seven other controls that determine the hyphenation rules.

Words with at Least. You can direct InDesign's hyphenation system to leave short words alone using the Words with at Least option. If you don't want short words to break, you can set this to 5 or higher.

After First. The value you enter here sets the minimum size, in characters, of the word fragment preceding a hyphen. Many typesetters dislike two-letter fragments, so they increase this value to three.

FIGURE 4-49
Hyphenation Settings Dialog Box



Before Last. The value you enter here sets the minimum size, in characters, of the word fragment following a hyphen. Some people don't mind if the "ly" in "truly" sits all by itself on a line. You care about type, so you set this to at least three.

Hyphen Limit. You can limit the number of consecutive hyphens you'll allow to appear at the left edge of a column of text using the Hyphen Limit field. Enter a value greater than one to allow consecutive hyphens.

Hyphenation Zone. Another way to limit the number of hyphens in a paragraph is the Hyphenation Zone setting. The idea is that there is an invisible zone along the right margin of each paragraph. If InDesign is trying to break a word at the end of a line, it looks to see where the hyphenation zone is. If the word *before* the potentially hyphenated word falls inside the zone, then InDesign just gives up and pushes the word onto the next line (without hyphenating it). If the previous word does not fall into the zone, then InDesign will hyphenate the word.

That's the concept, at least. As it turns out, InDesign's composition algorithms are complex enough that the hyphenation zone is often overridden by other factors, especially when using the Paragraph Composer. In addition, the Hyphenation Zone setting doesn't have any effect at all on justified text. In general, for non-justified text, larger amounts mean fewer hyphens but more variation in line lengths ("rag").

Hyphenation Slider. Someone, somewhere must have complained that InDesign's hyphenation controls weren't flexible enough, because those wacky engineers at Adobe have added the Hyphenation Slider to the Hyphenation Settings dialog box. We're sure there's a lot of math behind what this slider is doing, but all you really need to know is that you can move the slider back and forth between Better Spacing and Fewer Hyphens to get a more pleasing appearance (turn on preview to see the effect of the slider).

This control is called "Nigel" because it goes all the way to eleven.

Hyphenate Capitalized Words. To prevent capitalized words (i.e., proper names) from hyphenating, turn off this option.

Hyphenate Last Words. We pride ourselves on having open minds and strong stomachs, but there are few things more nauseating than the last word of a paragraph being hyphenated, leaving a little runt

on the last line. We won't say that it's impossible to avoid it entirely, but you should at least turn off the Hyphenate Last Words checkbox, so that it won't happen automatically.

Hyphenate Across Columns. Our generous, kind, and patient publisher asks little from us (besides the best book we can muster), but they do ask one thing: Please don't allow words to hyphenate from one page to another. In older editions, we had to proof each page manually. Now we simply turn off the Hyphenate Across Columns checkbox in our body text paragraph style. Note that this stops hyphenation across all columns, even from one column in a multicolumn text frame to the next. By the way, we have seen this control fail, so it appears that InDesign considers it a request rather than a rule; it tries not to hyphenate across a column, but it will if it thinks it needs to.

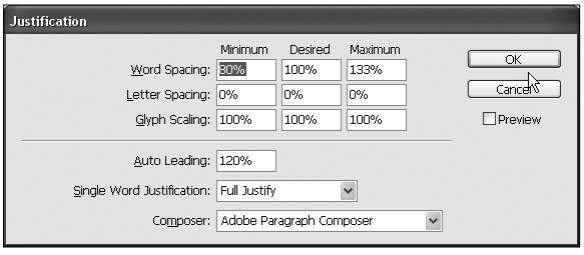
Discretionary Hyphens. There's another way to control hyphenation: Use a discretionary hyphen character. When you type a discretionary hyphen (Command-Shift-hyphen/Ctrl-Shift-hyphen) in a word, you're telling InDesign that you wouldn't mind if the word hyphenates here. This doesn't force the program to hyphenate the word at that point; it just gives it the option. This is much better than typing a regular hyphen because if (or when) your text reflows, you won't be stuck with hyphens littered in the middles of your paragraphs—the discretionary hyphen "disappears" when it's not needed. Another way to get a discretionary hyphen is to use the Insert Special Character submenu (in the Type menu or the context-sensitive menu).

By the way, longtime QuarkXPress users know that in that program you can place a discretionary hyphen before a word to make it not break. That's also true in InDesign, but, if you want a word (or phrase) not to hyphenate, select the text and turn on the No Break option in the Character panel's menu. If it's a word that you think should never be hyphenated, or should always be hyphenated differently than InDesign thinks, you can add it to your user dictionary (see "Adding Words to the User Dictionary" in Chapter 3, "Text").

Controlling Word and Letter Spacing

When InDesign composes the text in your publications, it does so by following the spacing rules you've laid down using the controls in the Justification dialog box (choose Justification from the Paragraph panel menu or press Command-Option-Shift-J/Ctrl-Alt-Shift-J to display the dialog box; see Figure 4-50). Contrary to popular opinion, this dialog box controls all text composition, not only that of justified text.

FIGURE 4-50
Justification Dialog Box



This dialog box offers six controls: Word Spacing, Letter Spacing, Glyph Scaling, Auto Leading, Single Word Justification, and Composer. The important thing to remember is that you will never find a set of spacing values that will work for all fonts, point sizes, and line lengths. The text itself plays a role: spacing settings that work for one author may not work for another, even when the typesetting specifications are the same. You have to experiment to discover the settings that work best for you and your publications.

InDesign's default settings give you a reasonable starting point. The spacing values encourage wide word spacing over narrow word spacing, and attempt to discourage letter spacing.

Word Spacing. You can adjust the amount of space InDesign places between words by changing the Minimum, Desired, and Maximum percentages. In non-justified text, only the Desired value matters. In InDesign, the values in the word spacing fields are *percentages of* the standard word space (the width of the space is defined by the font's designer, and is stored in the font). The defaults tend to encourage wide word spacing over narrow word spacing in justified text.

Letter Spacing. You can adjust the amount of space the program places between each character in your paragraphs by changing the Minimum, Desired, and Maximum percentages. Again, in text that isn't justified, only the Desired value makes a difference. Note that these percentages represent the *amount of variation* from a standard spacing unit—the "spaceband" defined in the font. By default, the percentages are all set to zero, which discourages letter spacing.

Glyph Scaling. When you enter anything other than 100% in any of the Glyph Scaling fields, you give InDesign permission to scale the characters in the paragraph to make them fit. Ole and David disagree on usefulness of this feature. Ole is not a type purist, but he does not see the point in distorting character shapes when other, better options are available. Why take the risk? David, on the other hand insists that no one can see the difference when you allow InDesign

to scale glyphs by plus or minus one percent (and sometimes even two). Ole thinks that this is something like thinking that it's not committing a crime if no one catches you.

Both authors agree that glyph scaling might come in handy if you have exhausted *every other available option* to get a line to fit. What you do is, of course, up to you and your conscience.

Auto Leading. The Auto Leading feature is easy: This controls how InDesign calculates the leading of characters that have a leading of Auto (see "Leading," earlier in this chapter, for why we almost never use Auto leading). This control is here, rather than in one of the Preferences dialog boxes, because the base autoleading percentage is a property of individual paragraphs (unlike QuarkXPress, where the autoleading percentage is set at the document level).

Single Word Justification. What do you want InDesign to do when a word in the middle of a paragraph is so long (or a column so narrow) that only that one word fits on the line? If the line isn't justified, it's no big deal. But if the line is justified, do you want InDesign to add letterspacing to spread the word out across the line? Or make it flush left, flush right, or centered? That's what the Single Word Justification pop-up menu controls.

Composer. Earlier in this chapter, we discussed the Paragraph Composer and how it's different from the Single Line composer. Here's one more place you can specify which InDesign should use.

Balance Ragged Lines

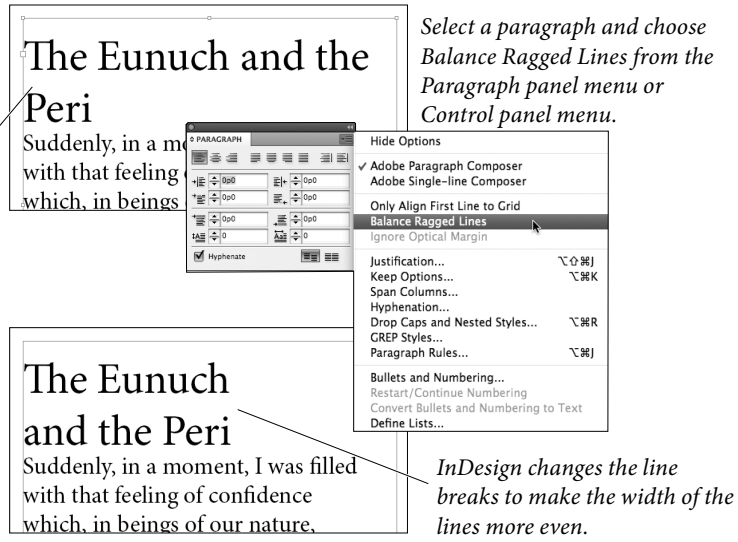
Sometimes headlines or headings are way out of balance—and we don't just mean the political slant. We mean that the lines are of wildly varying length. The first line fills the column; the second line contains a single short word. This is, at best, unsightly; at worst, it makes the text hard to read.

InDesign's Balance Ragged Lines feature can help you make the line widths in a paragraph more even. To do this, choose Balance Ragged Lines from the Paragraph panel or Control panel menu. (Note that this feature only works on non-justified paragraphs.) Take a look at Figure 4-51 to see the effect of Balance Ragged Lines.

If the last line of the paragraph is significantly narrower than the other lines, the program breaks the text so that the last line is wider.

Balance Ragged Lines generally produces an inverted pyramid shape—that is, the first line is longer than the second line, the third line is shorter than the second line, and so on. This matches Ole's expectations, but is the opposite of what David expects.

FIGURE 4-51
Balancing Ragged Lines



Highlighting Typographic Problems

InDesign can "flag" text composition problems—cases where the program has had to break your rules for composing text, or where substituted fonts appear in your publication. Open the Preferences dialog box, choose the Composition pane, then turn on the options in the Highlight section of the Composition Preferences dialog box. Lines in which InDesign has had to violate composition rules you've established (using the Justification and Keep Options dialog boxes) are highlighted in yellow; substituted fonts are highlighted in pink (see Figure 4-52). We usually work with these turned on so we can quickly identify "problem" lines.

Paragraph Keep Options

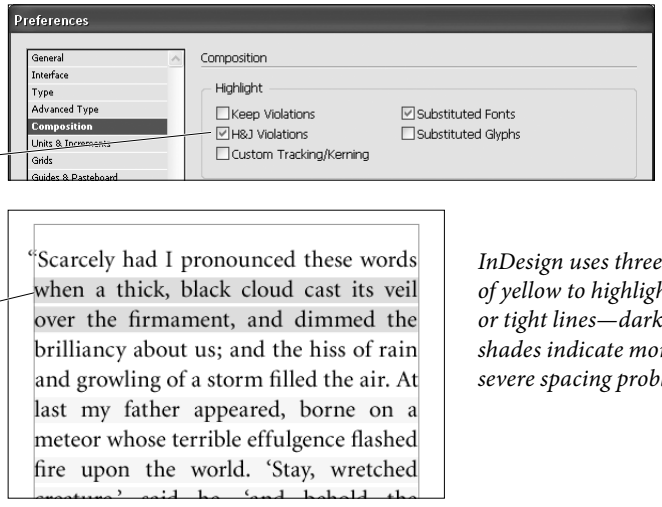
A *widow* is the last line of a paragraph that winds up all by itself at the top of a column or page. An *orphan* is the first line of a paragraph that lands all by itself at the bottom of a column or page. Widows and orphans are the bane of a typesetter's existence.

Designers sometimes also refer to the single-word last line of a paragraph as either a widow or an orphan. To avoid the confusion, we often just use the word *runt*.

All typographic widows and orphans are bad, but certain kinds are really bad—for example, a widow line that consists of only one word, or even the last part of a hyphenated word. Another related typographic horror is the heading that stands alone with its following paragraph on the next page.

Fortunately, InDesign has a set of controls that can easily prevent widows and orphans from sneaking into your document. These controls—along with a setting that lets you force a paragraph to begin at a particular place—live in the Keep Options dialog box, which you

FIGURE 4-52
Highlighting Loose and Tight Lines



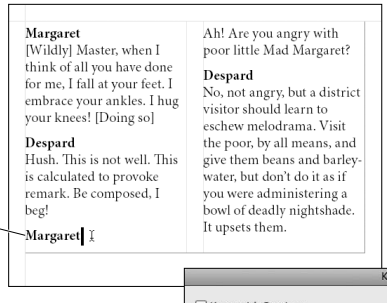
When you turn on the H&J Violations option…

…InDesign highlights lines that break the spacing ranges you set in the Justification dialog box.

InDesign uses three shades of yellow to highlight loose or tight lines—darker shades indicate more severe spacing problems.

can find by selecting Keep Options from the Paragraph panel's menu, or by pressing Command-Option-K/Ctrl-Alt-K (see Figure 4-53). There are four parts to this dialog box: Keep with Previous, Keep with Next, Keep Lines Together, and Start Paragraph.

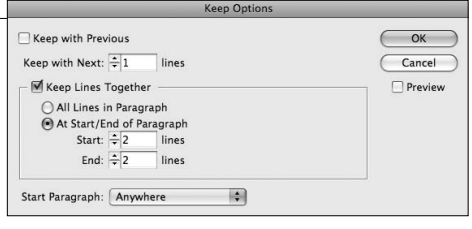
FIGURE 4-53
Keep Options

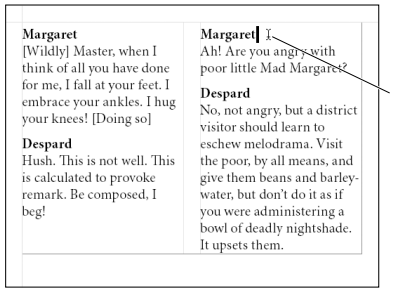


In addition to the Keep with Next control demonstrated in this example, the Keep Options dialog box contains other options that you can use to control the way that paragraphs break (or don't break) across columns and pages.

This heading has come "unstuck" from the paragraph following it.

To prevent this, select the heading paragraph and display the Keep Options dialog box.





Enter a value in the Keep with Next field. This way, when the paragraph following the heading moves to a new page or column, the heading follows along.

Keep with Previous. The Keep with Previous option keeps the top line of the paragraph with the previous paragraph, such as when you're adding notes below only some entries in a list.

Keep with Next. The Keep with Next Lines feature helps you ensure that headings and the paragraphs that follow them are kept together. If the paragraph is pushed onto a new column, a new page, or below an obstructing object, the heading follows. It's rare that we need to type more than 1 in the Lines field.

Keep Lines Together. The Keep Lines Together feature is the primary control over widows and orphans. When you turn on the Keep Lines Together checkbox and choose All Lines in Paragraph, InDesign won't break the paragraph across column or pages.

You can control the number of lines that should be kept together at the beginning and end of the paragraph by choosing At Start/End of Paragraph. The value you type in the Start field determines the minimum number of lines that InDesign allows at the beginning of a paragraph. For example, a Start value of 2 means that if at least two lines of that paragraph cannot be placed on the page, then the entire paragraph is pushed over to the next page. The value specified in the End field determines the minimum number of lines that InDesign lets fall alone at the top of a column or after an obstruction. Setting both Start and End to 2 means you'll never get a widow or orphan.

Start Paragraph. Use the options on the Start Paragraph pop-up menu to force a column or page break before your selected paragraph. For example, if you always want a particular paragraph to sit at the top of a page, select the paragraph and choose On Next Page from the Start Paragraph pop-up menu.

Note that you can also get a similar effect by choosing an item from the Insert Break Character submenu in the Type menu. The Start Paragraph feature is better, however, because you can use it in a definition of a paragraph style (see "Styles," later in this chapter).

Bullets and Numbering

As the human attention span has grown shorter under the stresses of modern life, lists of one sort or another have come to dominate our texts. Abraham Lincoln could spend several days delivering a single perfect paragraph to an informed audience; we must convey the same information in an executive summary that takes no more

than nanoseconds to parse. InDesign aids and abets this diminution of the human intellect by providing the Bullets and Numbering feature, which provides:

- Bullets.
- Numbering.

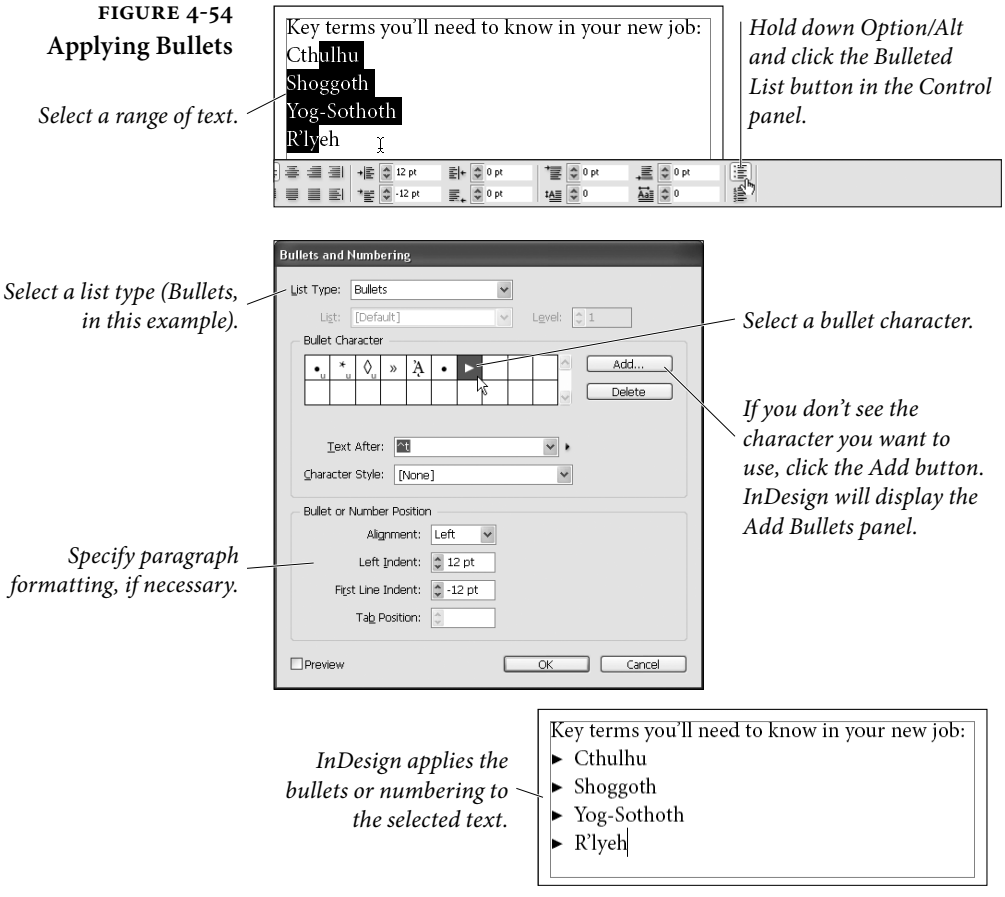
Bullets and Numbering is a paragraph level attribute that applies a bullet character or a numeral to the start of the paragraph. Applying a bullet is straightforward; numbering is a bit more complicated.

Applying Bullets

The simplest way to apply bullets to a selection of paragraphs is to click the Bulleted List button in the Paragraph view of the Control panel (or choose Apply Bullets from the Bulleted & Numbered Lists submenu of the Type menu). Follow the steps below, and you can control the formatting and position of the bullets (see Figure 4-54):

1. Select a range of text.
2. Choose Bullets and Numbering from the Paragraph panel or Control panel menu. You can also Option/Alt-click the Bulleted List button in the Paragraph view of the Control panel. InDesign displays the Bullets and Numbering dialog box.
3. Choose Bullets from the List Type pop-up menu.
4. Pick from among the choices in the Bullet Character section, which works very much like the Glyphs panel described earlier in this chapter—the dialog contains a short list of characters, but you can click the Add button to choose characters from any of the available fonts and add them then to the list.
5. If you want the bullet to be followed by a tab, leave the Text After field set to `^t`. If you'd prefer the bullet followed by something else (such as an en space), you can type it in that field or pick from the flyout menu to the right of the field.
6. You can apply formatting to the bullet character in the Character Style pop-up menu (assuming you have defined a style).
7. Adjust the position of the bullet in the Bullet or Number Position section. The Left Indent and First Line Indent fields control the indents for the entire paragraph (overriding any other indents you've set). To hang the bullet in the margin, you'd want a positive Left Indent and a negative First Line Indent.

FIGURE 4-54
Applying Bullets



If the First Line Indent is set to zero and your Text After is set to a tab character, the position of the text after the bullet is defined by the first tab stop. If you've assigned tab stops already, you can ignore this.

The Alignment pop-up menu lets you control the position of the bullet at the beginning of the paragraph—Left, Right, or Centered—but it only works when your Left Indent is large enough to allow the character to move (InDesign won't allow the bullet to fall outside the text frame).

8. Once you've got the inserted characters to look the way you want them to (turn on the Preview option), click the OK button to apply the list formatting to the selected paragraphs.

Default Bullets. If you choose a custom bullet character with the Add button in the Bullets and Numbering dialog box, InDesign remembers that bullet in the currently-open document. If you need

that same bullet character in other documents, you can add it to the list of default bullets:

1. Close all documents in InDesign.
2. Open the Bullets and Numbering dialog box.
3. Set the Type pop-up menu to Bullets.
4. Use the Add button to add your desired bullet character.
5. If you want this character to be the default bullet (the one InDesign gives you if you don't specify any other), select it.
6. Set the Type pop-up menu back to None and then click OK.

Applying Numbering

When Adobe first implemented the automatic numbering feature, we complained that it was anemic and useless. They responded in the next version by adding so many features that its now not only extremely useful but also somewhat overwhelming to use. Fortunately, it's all logical if you take it step by step and understand which parts of the Bullets and Numbering dialog box you can ignore.

The simplest way to apply numbering to one or more selected paragraphs is to click the Numbered List button in the Control panel (when it's in paragraph mode), or choose Apply Numbers from the Bulleted & Numbered Lists submenu, under the Type menu. This gives you a basic numbered list, starting at 1.

Continuing Numbering. Let's say you have five paragraphs, but the third paragraph shouldn't be numbered (that is, the section numbered "2" has two paragraphs). The fastest way to accomplish this is to select all five paragraphs, turn on numbering, then select just the third paragraph and turn numbering off.

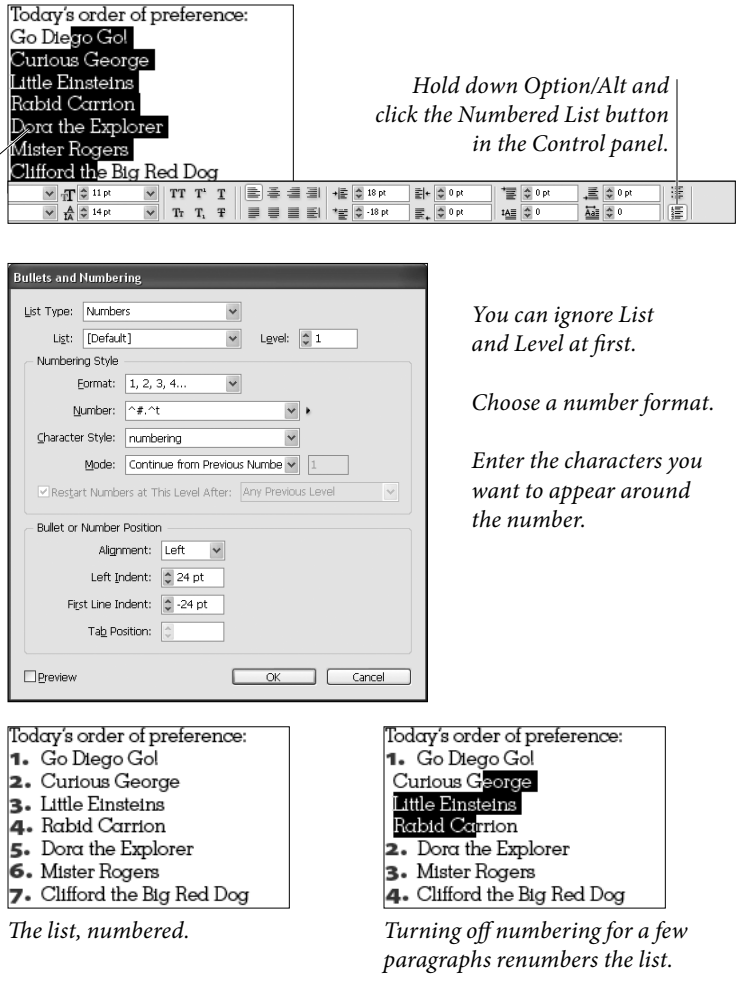
Alternately, you could assign numbering to the first two paragraphs and then number the last two paragraphs (which will start at "1" again). Then place the cursor in the fourth paragraph (which is currently numbered "1") and choose Continue Numbering from either the Context menu or the Bulleted & Numbered Lists submenu, under the Type menu.

Formatting Numbers. The default formatting applied to automatic numbers is dull as rocks: the number—set in the same font, size, color, and styling as the first character of the paragraph—followed by a tab. In order to spice up your numbering, select Bullets and Numbering from the Control panel menu (or Option/Alt-click the Numbered

List button in the Control panel). When the List Type pop-up menu is set to Numbers, you can adjust the following settings in the Numbering Style section of the dialog box (see Figure 4-55).

- **Format.** You can choose from among normal numerals (such as 1, 2, 3, *etc.*), Roman numerals (I, II, III, *etc.*), or alphabet characters (a, b, c, *etc.*) from the Format pop-up menu. Choose None to omit the number entirely, though it's rare that you'd want to.
- **Number.** You can control how the number appears by typing codes into the Number field. The default value, `^#.^t`, means type the current number for this list, followed by a period, then followed by a tab. You don't have to remember the codes—you can use the pop-up menu associated with the field. If you do use a tab character, it has to be the last code in this field.

FIGURE 4-55
Applying Numbering



The list, numbered.

Turning off numbering for a few paragraphs renumbers the list.

You can type pretty much anything in the Number field. For example, you could type `Item No. ^#^_` which means type "Item No." followed by a space, then the number, then an en dash.

- **Character Style.** InDesign applies the character style you choose from this pop-up menu to everything in the Number field.
- **Mode.** Use this pop-up menu to specify whether the list should Continue from Previous Number or Start At a specific number.

Positioning Numbers. You can adjust the position of your number in the same ways we discussed positioning bullets. You can make the right edge of the numbers align by choosing Right from the Alignment pop-up menu and setting the Left Indent to a positive number.

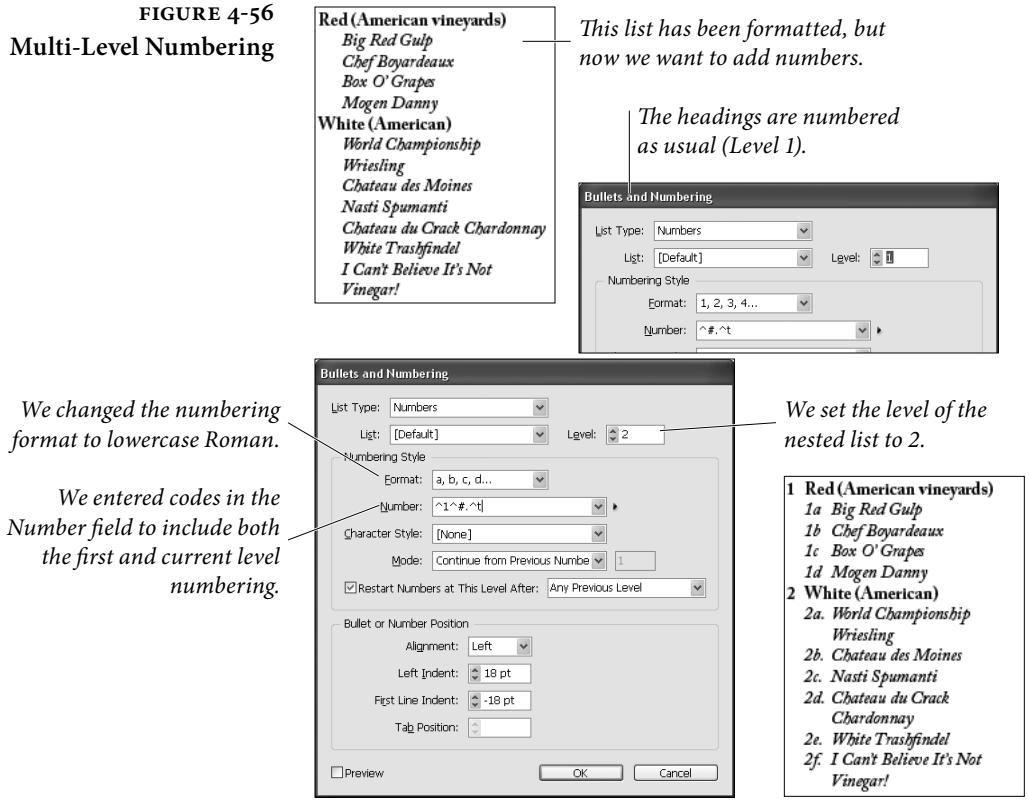
Multi-Level Numbering. What if you need a sub-list? For example, after number 4, you might have 4a, 4b, 4c, and so on. Or in a long technical document, you might have sections numbered 1.1.1, then 1.1.2, then 1.1.3, then 1.2.1, and so on. To pull off this kind of numbering, you need to assign levels in the Bullets and Numbering dialog box, then—optionally—adjust the Number field's codes (see Figure 4-56).

This can get confusing, so let's focus on that 4a, 4b, 4c example. After you select the paragraphs you want to affect (in this case, the three paragraphs after paragraph 4), open the dialog box and change the Level field to 2. This defines a sub-list inside the main numbered list. Now choose the lower-case alphabet from the Format pop-up menu and change the Number field to `^1^#.^t` (which means "type the most recent level 1 number, then the current number in this sub-list, then a period and a tab"). You may also want to adjust the Left Indent in the Position section so that the sub-list is further indented.

Creating Named Lists. Numbering isn't just for a few paragraphs in a single story. You can create far more complex kinds of numbered lists that continue across multiple text frames, or even across multiple documents in a book. You can also have multiple numbered lists in parallel, for example, figure numbering and table numbering. The key to all these tricks is to define named lists. (InDesign just calls these "lists," but we call them "named lists" to avoid confusion with the generic "lists" that we've been discussing.)

You can define a named list by choosing Define Lists from the Bulleted & Numbered Lists submenu (under the Type menu) and then clicking the New button in the Define Lists dialog box. Or, if you already have the Bullets and Numbering dialog box open, you

FIGURE 4-56
Multi-Level Numbering



can choose New List from the List pop-up menu. In either case, you get the New List dialog box, in which you can type the list's name and choose whether you want this numbered list to continue across multiple stories (that is, across more than one unthreaded text frame) and/or across more than one document in a book (see Figure 4-57).

Once you have a named list defined, you can assign it to a paragraph by choosing it from the List pop-up menu in the Bullets and Numbering dialog box.

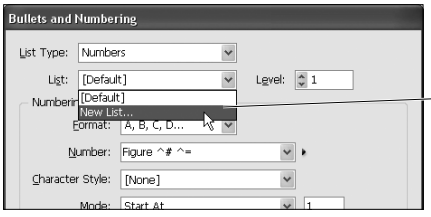
However, the order in which paragraphs are numbered may be confusing to you. Here are the rules:

- In general, numbering follows page order. For example, if you have an unthreaded text frame on page 1 and another on page 2, InDesign will number paragraphs on page 1 first—just as you'd expect.
- If you have more than one frame on a page (and those frames aren't threaded), numbering in the frames is based on the order in which the frames were created—not the order on which they appear on the page.

FIGURE 4-57
Named Lists

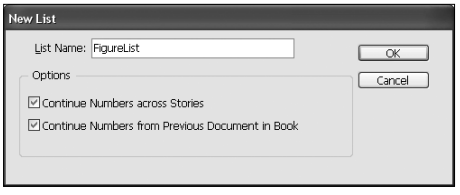
To number these captions, we select the three text frames…

…and apply numbering. Because the text frames are not threaded together, we need to create a new named list to keep our figure numbering straight.

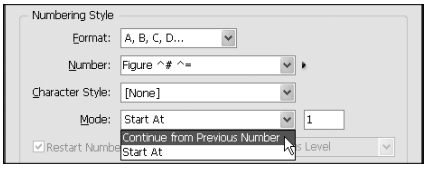


Choose New List from the List pop-up menu.

InDesign displays the New List dialog box.



Enter a name for the list, and turn on Continue Numbers Across Stories.



Back in the Bullets and Numbering dialog box, we changed the Format and set Mode to Continue from Previous Number.

Remember that each frame on a page is numbered in the order it was created—not its position on the page!

Each caption is automatically numbered… or, um, "lettered."

- All the numbers in a single story (including multiple threaded text frames) are numbered at the same time—starting with the first frame in the thread—even if they're on different pages. For example, if you have a story that jumps from page 1 to page 5, and you have an unthreaded text frame on page 2, the numbered paragraphs on page 5 would be smaller than those on page 2 because InDesign is numbering the threaded story first.

  Even stranger, if for some reason that story was instead threaded from page 5 to page 1, the numbering would start on page 2, then continue on page 5, then end on page 1.

- Paragraphs inside anchored text frames are numbered along with the story they're in. Let's say you're numbering your figures and some of your figure numbers are anchored inside a text story that spans from page 1 to 100—but one figure number is sitting in an unthreaded, unanchored text frame on page 2.

InDesign will number all 100 pages, including anchored frames, before it gets around to numbering page 2.

This means that you should either keep all your text frames anchored or keep them unanchored—mixing and matching will cause you heartache.

If you want a numbered list to continue from one document to the next in a book panel, your named list has to be present in all the documents—fortunately, the book panel's Synchronize feature can copy named lists for you (see Chapter 8, "Long Documents").

Removing Bullets and Numbering

To remove bullets or numbering, select the paragraphs in question and then click once on the Bulleted List or Numbered List button in the Control panel (whichever is currently highlighted). Alternately, you could choose Remove Bullets or Remove Numbering from the Bulleted & Numbered Lists submenu, under the Type menu. Or you could display the Bullets and Numbering dialog box and choose None from the List Type pop-up menu. Whichever you choose, the bullets and numbers are gone, baby, gone.

Converting Bullets and Numbers to Normal Text

To change the characters inserted by the Bullets and Numbering feature to normal text (*i.e.*, text you can select with the Type tool and format using InDesign's typesetting features), select the paragraphs and choose Convert Numbering to Text or Convert Bullets to Text from the Context menu. You can also find this command in the Paragraph panel menu, the Control panel menu, and the Bulleted & Numbered Lists submenu, under the Type menu. If you select a range of text that contains both bulleted and numbered paragraphs, choose Convert Bullets and Numbering to Text.

Bullets and Numbering in Paragraph Styles

We've been talking about applying numbering or bullets directly to paragraphs as local formatting, but in the real world we'd virtually never do this. Instead, we'd first create a paragraph style that includes the bullet or numbering, and then apply that paragraph style to the paragraphs in question. We talk about styles below, but suffice it to say that we often work with two or three paragraph styles for each type of list. For example, in this book, we use a "numbered list" style that includes both numbering and a little Space After; and we use a "numbered list first" (which we apply to the first item in the list) that is based on "numbered list" but also includes a little Space Before. Plus, we use a "numbered list last" (which we apply to the last item in the list), which includes a little Space After.

Styles

When you think about the text in your publication, chances are good you're thinking of each paragraph as being a representative of a particular kind of text. You're thinking, "That's a headline, that's a subhead, and that's a photo caption." Chances are also good that you're thinking of those paragraphs as having certain formatting attributes: font, size, leading, and indents.

That's what text styles do—they bundle all those attributes together so you can apply them to text with a single click. But there's more—if you then change your mind about the formatting, you can edit the style, and all the text with that style applied to it (that is, "tagged" with the style) is reformatted automatically.

Once you've created a text style for a specific kind of text, you'll never have to claw your way through the Character panel or Paragraph panel again. Unless, of course, you want to apply a local formatting override to your styled text, which you're always free to do.

Global versus Local Formatting. We've been using the term "local formatting." What are we talking about? The key to understanding text styles is understanding the difference between style-based formatting and local formatting.

Local formatting is what you get when you select text and apply formatting directly, using the Character panel or the choices on the Type menu. When you apply formatting using text styles, on the other hand, you're applying "global" formatting (that is, formatting specified by the selected style).

If local formatting has been applied to text that has had a paragraph style applied to it, you'll see a "+" after the style name in the Paragraph Styles panel when the text is selected (see Figure 4-58).

Plus What? When you see that the text you've selected in a styled paragraph contains a local override, how can you tell what that local override is? If you have tool tips turned on, you can move the cursor over the style name, and InDesign will display a list of the

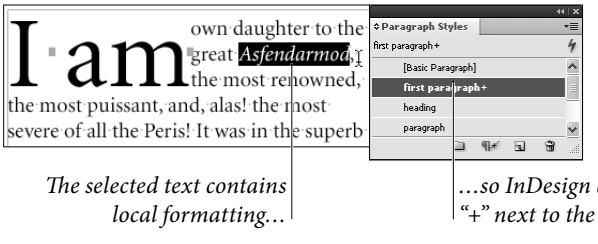


FIGURE 4-58
Styles and Local Overrides

local overrides. Alternatively, you can choose New Paragraph Style from the Paragraph Styles panel menu. Look at the list of attributes in the Style Settings list at the bottom of the panel—it'll say "<stylename> + next: Same Style +" (where "<stylename>" is the name of the style applied to the paragraph) and a list of formatting. The items in the list are the local formatting. Click Cancel (or press Command-period/Esc) to close this dialog box without creating a new style.

Incorrect Style Order. Paragraph and character styles should appear in alphabetical order in their respective panels. Sometimes, though, the panels get confused and list them in a near-random order (probably the order in which you created the styles, which is silly). If that happens, just choose Sort by Name from the panel menu.

Styles Are More than Formatting. When you apply a style to a paragraph (which we call "tagging" a paragraph with a style), you're doing more than just applying the formatting defined by the style. You're telling InDesign what the paragraph is—not just what it looks like, but what role it has to play in your publication. Is the paragraph important? Is it an insignificant legal notice in type that's intentionally too small to read? The style says it all.

The most important thing to remember when you're creating and applying styles is that tagging a paragraph with a style creates a link between the paragraph and all other paragraphs tagged with that style, and between the paragraph and the definition of the style. Change the style's definition, and watch the formatting and behavior of the paragraphs tagged with that style change to match.

Character Styles

By now, most of us are used to the idea of paragraph styles, which give us a way to apply multiple paragraph formatting attributes to an entire paragraph with a single action. (If you're not familiar with paragraph styles, we discuss them in the next section.) Character styles are just like paragraph styles, except that they can be applied to ranges of text smaller than an entire paragraph (and, obviously, they lack paragraph formatting features, such as alignment). Applying a character style to a text selection establishes a link between that text and the definition of the style—edit the style, and the formatting of the text changes.

Use character styles for any character formatting you apply over and over again. Run-in headings, drop caps, and special ornamental characters are all good candidates for character styles. Each time you use a character style, you're saving yourself several seconds you would have spent fiddling with settings in the Character panel or the

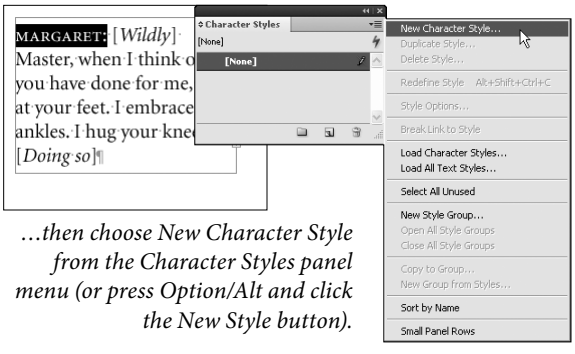
Type menu. It might not seem like much, but saving a few seconds several hundred times a day can add up.

Creating Character Styles. The easiest way to create a character style is to build it "by example" (see Figure 4-59).

1. Select some text that has the formatting you want.
2. Hold down Option/Alt and click the Create New Style button at the bottom of the Character Styles panel (or select New Character Style from the Character Styles panel menu). InDesign displays the New Character Style dialog box.
3. At this point, if you want to create a relationship between this style and another character style, you can choose that style from the Based On pop-up menu (see "Creating Parent-Child Style Relationships," later in this chapter).

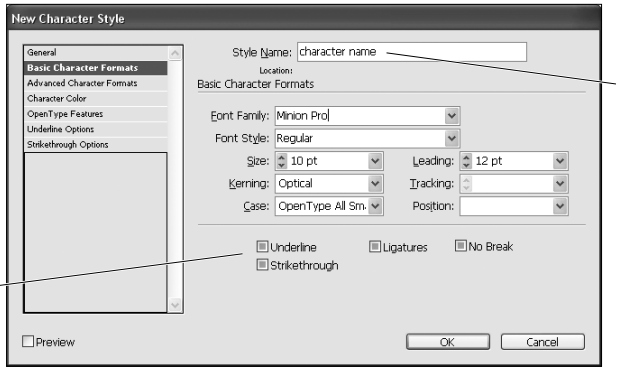
FIGURE 4-59
Creating a Character Style

To create a new character style, select a range of text that has the formatting you want…



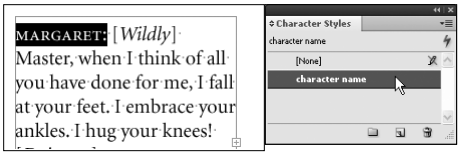
…then choose New Character Style from the Character Styles panel menu (or press Option/Alt and click the New Style button).

InDesign defines a new character style based on the formatting of the selected text.



Enter a name for the style.

Note that InDesign does not define character formatting attributes that are the same as the default formatting of the surrounding text.



InDesign adds the new character style to the list of character styles, but it won't necessarily apply it to the selected text for you.

4. Now give your style a name. You can also assign a keyboard shortcut to the character style—the key used must use a modifier key (Command, Ctrl, or Shift and a number key from the numeric keypad; NumLock must be on to define the shortcut).

When you create a character style, InDesign won't automatically apply the style to the text you selected in Step 1 unless you turn on the Apply Style to Selection checkbox in the General pane of the New Character Style dialog box. If you neglect to turn on this helpful checkbox, you'll have to apply the style to the selected text manually.

QuarkXPress Users Beware: In QuarkXPress, a character style always defines *all* the character formatting of the text—font, color, size, and other attributes. InDesign's character styles, however, are defined by *differences* between the character formatting of the selected text and the default character formatting of the surrounding text. In InDesign you can create a character style which, when applied to text, changes only its size and color, but retains all other underlying formatting.

This is actually a good thing—it means you can create character styles that affect some, but not all, of the attributes of a selection. It's different from the way that almost every other application defines character styles, and it takes some getting used to.

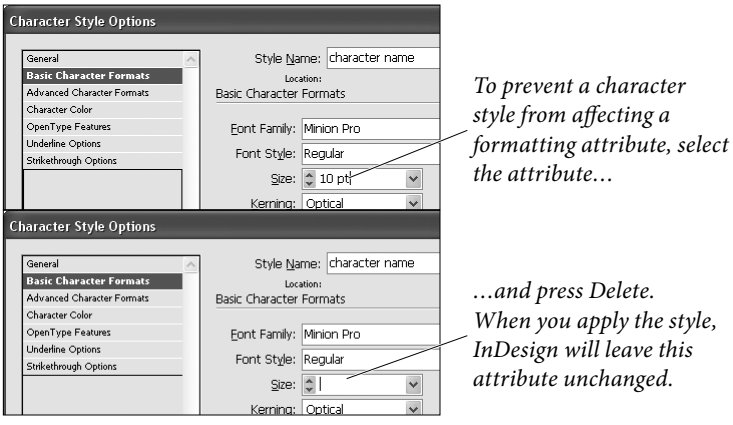
Character Style Tips. Here are a few things to keep in mind when defining character styles in InDesign.

- If you're building a character style based on example text (as we suggested earlier), InDesign only picks up the formatting differences between the text you've selected and the paragraph style applied to the paragraph. For example, if the underlying paragraph style uses the font Minion Pro Italic, and the text you've selected uses the same font, the Font attribute of the character style will not be defined automatically. If you want the font to be part of the character style definition, you can add it once you have the New Character Style dialog box open (select the font from the Font Family pop-up menu in the Basic Character Formats pane).
- If you want your character style to be defined by *every* attribute of your text selection, you can use the CreateCharacterStyle script (see Chapter 12, "Scripting," for more on the example scripts that come with InDesign). Or you can create the

character style from scratch (not from example text), specifying the font, size, color, leading, and all other formatting.

- Clicking the New Style button in the Character Styles panel creates a new character style based on whatever style was selected in the panel. It doesn't open a dialog box.
- If you want to "undefine" an attribute in a character style, select and delete the current value (see Figure 4-60).

FIGURE 4-60
Undefining Attributes



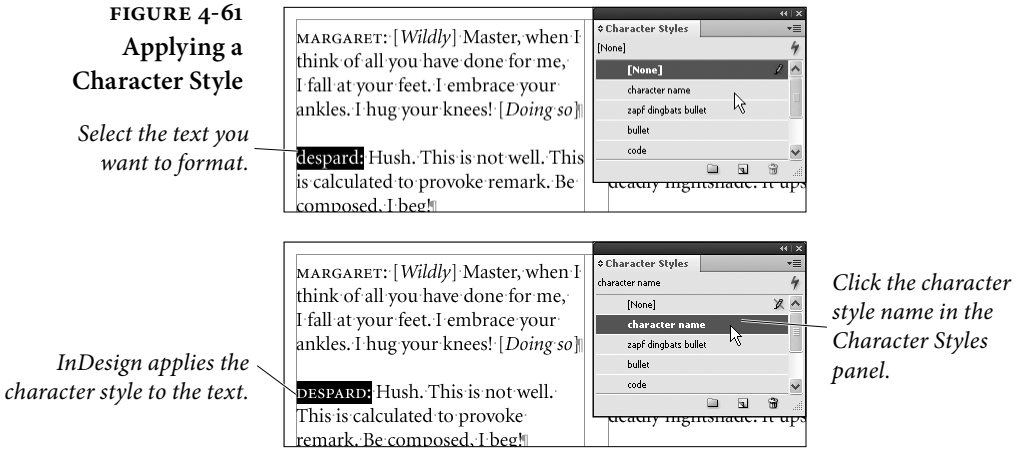
Applying Character Styles. To apply a character style, select some text and do any one of the following things (see Figure 4-61).

- Click the character style name in the Character Styles panel.
- Press the keyboard shortcut you assigned to the character style.
- Point at the style name in the Character Styles panel and choose Apply from the context menu.
- Press Command-Enter/Ctrl Enter to display the Quick Apply panel, type the name of the style, and then press Enter.

Again, applying a character style changes only those attributes that are defined in the style. This can cause grave confusion and hair-pulling if you're used to the way QuarkXPress does it. If you apply a character style that applies only the underline type style and color, for example—InDesign leaves all other character formatting as is.

To remove a character style from a text selection, click None in the Character Styles panel—this reverts the text back to the underlying formatting of the paragraph style. If you want to remove the character style and leave the formatting alone (convert it to local formatting), choose Break Link to Style from the panel menu. This is

FIGURE 4-61
Applying a Character Style



sometimes useful when you want some text to be formatted using the formatting of a given character style, but you don't want it linked to that style (because you know the style definition might change).

Editing Character Styles. The great thing about styles is that you can always change them later, and those changes ripple throughout your document. To edit a character style, you can use any or all of the following approaches—all of them display the Character Style Options dialog box, which you can use to change the attributes of the style.

- Hold down Command-Option-Shift/Ctrl-Alt-Shift and double-click the style name in the Character Styles panel.
- Point at the style you want to edit in the Character Styles panel and choose Edit from the context menu.
- Select the style and choose Style Options from the Character Styles panel menu.
- Double-click the style name in the Character Styles panel.

The first two approaches above do not apply the style; the latter two apply the style to the selected text, or to the document default formatting when no text is selected. Be aware of this difference as you go to edit a style—otherwise, you run the risk of accidentally applying the character style.

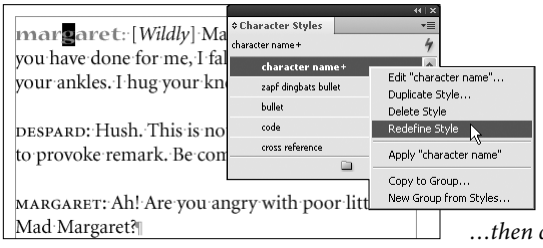
Redefining Character Styles. Editing a character style through the Character Style Options dialog box works fine, but is kind of boring. For quick changes, try this: Find some text tagged with the character style you want to redefine, then apply local formatting to it (change it

to the way you want the style to be defined). A "+" will appear next to the character style name in the Character Styles panel. Next, without deselecting the text, press Command-Option-Shift-C/Ctrl-Alt-Shift-C. InDesign automatically redefines the character style based on the selected text (see Figure 4-62).

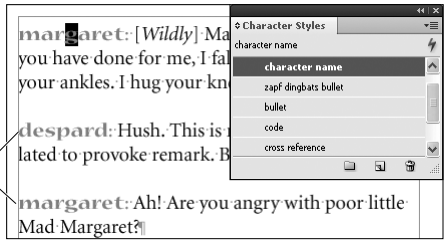
Alternatively, you can select the text and choose Redefine Style from the Character Styles panel menu. Or you could point at the style name in the panel and choose Redefine from the context menu. But the keyboard shortcut is more fun.

FIGURE 4-62
Redefining a Character Style

Apply local formatting to an instance of the character style you want to redefine…



…then choose Redefine Style from the Character Styles panel context menu.



InDesign updates the character style's definition based on the formatting of the selected text.

Deleting character styles. To remove a character style, press Command-Shift-A/Ctrl-Shift-A to deselect everything (do this so that you don't accidentally apply the character style to text), then select the character style and choose Delete Style from the Character Styles panel menu (or click the Delete Style button in the panel).

InDesign displays the Delete Character Style dialog box, where you can select a replacement style (including no style). If you choose another character style, InDesign applies that character style to the text that had been formatted with the deleted style. If you choose no style, the text formatted with the style using the character style doesn't change appearance—it becomes local formatting.

Paragraph Styles

Paragraph styles encapsulate all text formatting—both paragraph formatting and character formatting.

Basic Style. If you look at the Paragraph Styles panel, you'll always see a "Basic Paragraph" style. This is something like Word's (infamous) "Normal" style, and provides a kind of default style for all text.

We tend not to use this style, or base any other style on it, because we've found it can cause problems as we move text from document to document. In a nutshell: If you have defined Basic Paragraph Style one way, then you copy a paragraph tagged with that style to a new document, the text formatting changes because InDesign applies the new document's Basic Paragraph Style definition. That's usually not what you were hoping for.

Creating Paragraph Styles. The easiest way (in our opinion) to create a text style is to format an example paragraph using local formatting, then create a new style based on that paragraph (see Figure 4-63).

1. Select a formatted paragraph.
2. Display the Paragraph Styles panel, if it's not already visible (press Command/Ctrl-F11).
3. Choose New Paragraph Style from the Paragraph Style pop-up menu in the Control panel, or from the Paragraph Styles panel menu (or Option/Alt-click the New Style button) to open the New Paragraph Style dialog box.
4. Enter a name for the style in the Style Name field. You could leave the name set to the default, but we think it's better to enter a descriptive name—"heading 1" is quite a bit easier to remember than "Paragraph Style 6."
5. You can also assign a Next Style (see "Next Styles" later in this chapter) and a keyboard shortcut to the style—the shortcut must use a modifier key (Shift, Command/Ctrl, Option/Alt, or some combination of the above) and a number key from the numeric keypad (NumLock must be on to define the shortcut).
6. Turn on the Apply Style to Selection checkbox in the General pane of the New Paragraph Style dialog box. (Otherwise, the style won't be applied to the paragraph your text cursor is in.)
7. Click the OK button.

The style definition includes all the character and paragraph formatting applied to the first character in the selected "example" text.

If you work by the hour, you can also define a paragraph style from scratch, rather than basing your style on an example:

1. Choose "New Style" from the Paragraph Styles panel menu. InDesign displays the New Style dialog box.

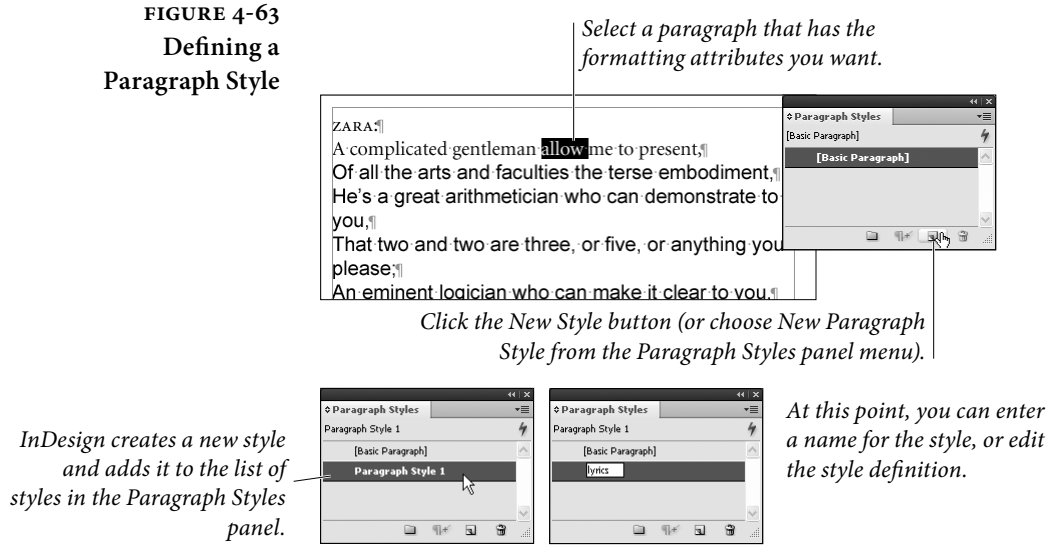


FIGURE 4-63
Defining a Paragraph Style

2. Work your way through the dialog box, setting the options as you want them for your new style. When everything looks the way you want it to, press Return/Enter to close the dialog box.

Creating a style this way is a little bit more awkward than simply basing a style on an example paragraph, but some people prefer it. We've met at least one person who likes setting tabs "without all that pesky text in the way."

Applying Paragraph Styles. To apply a paragraph style, select a paragraph or series of paragraphs (remember, you don't have to select the entire paragraph to apply paragraph formatting) and click a style name in the Paragraph Styles panel (see Figure 4-64). Alternatively, if you've defined a keyboard shortcut for the paragraph style, you can press the shortcut.

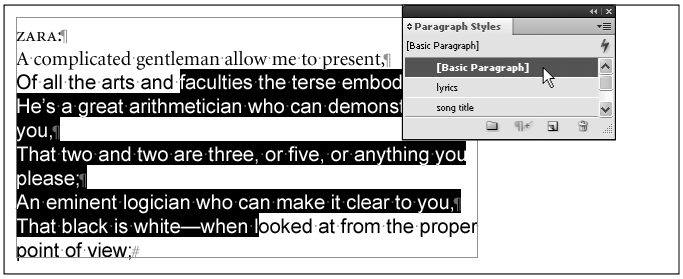
When you simply click a paragraph style to apply it, InDesign retains all the local formatting, so italic text remains italic. The one exception to this rule is when every character in the paragraph has local formatting—that stuff always gets removed.

To remove all local formatting as you apply a paragraph style, hold down Option/Alt as you click the paragraph style name. Any formatting applied using character styles is retained.

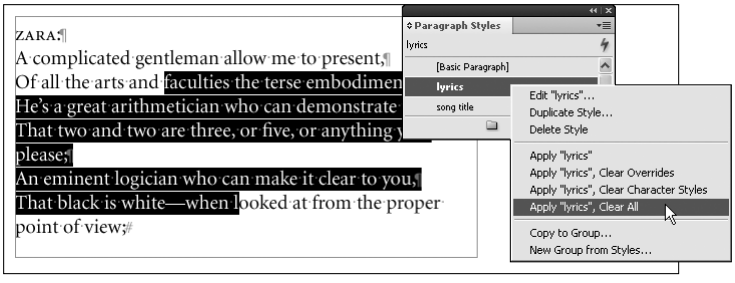
To remove all local formatting and remove formatting applied by character styles, hold down Option-Shift/Alt-Shift as you click the paragraph style name.

FIGURE 4-64
Applying a Paragraph Style

Select the paragraphs you want to format (remember, you don't need to select the entire paragraph).



Click a style name in the Paragraph Styles panel, or use the Context menu. InDesign applies the paragraph style to the selected paragraphs.



Alternatively, you can use the Context menu in the Paragraph Styles panel to control which local formatting overrides you want to clear and/or keep.

To remove all local formatting (not including character styles) after you've applied a style, click the Clear Override button at the bottom of the Paragraph Styles panel. To remove all local character formatting, hold down Command/Ctrl as you click the button; to remove paragraph formatting, hold down Command-Shift/Ctrl-Shift as you click.

To remove a paragraph style from a text selection, choose Break Link to Style from the Paragraph Styles panel menu. Note that this does not change the formatting or the look of the selected paragraphs—it simply applies the formatting applied by the paragraph style as local formatting. As we said in the "Character Styles" section, you can think of this as breaking the link between the paragraph and the style definition.

Editing Paragraph Styles. To edit a paragraph style, you can use any or all of the following approaches—all of them display the Paragraph Style Options dialog box, which you can use to change the attributes of the paragraph style.

- Hold down Command-Option-Shift/Ctrl-Alt-Shift and double-click the paragraph style name in the Paragraph Styles panel.
- Point at the style you want to edit in the Paragraph Styles panel and choose Edit from the context menu.

- Select the style and choose Style Options from the Paragraph Styles panel menu.
- Double-click the style name in the Paragraph Styles panel.

The first two approaches above do not apply the style; the latter two apply the style to the selected text, or to the document default formatting when no text is selected. Be aware of this difference as you go to edit a style—accidentally setting the default font for a document to a style featuring hot pink dingbats can be a frustrating and embarrassing experience.

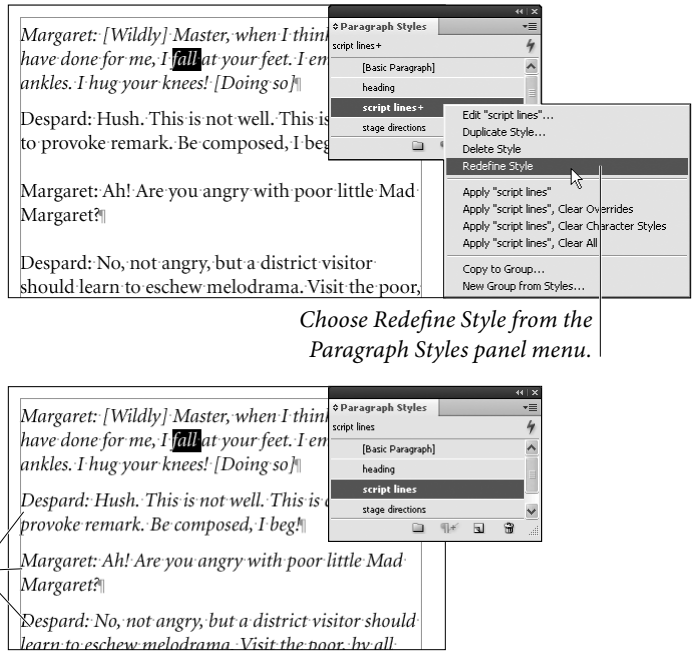
Redefining Paragraph Styles. The easiest way to *create* a paragraph style is to base the style on the formatting of an example paragraph. The easiest way to update the style definition? Do the same!

First, pick any paragraph tagged with the style you want to change, and apply local formatting to it (a "+" will appear next to the style name in the Paragraph Styles panel). Then choose Redefine Style from the Paragraph Styles panel menu (or press Command-Option-Shift-R/Ctrl-Alt-Shift-R, or use the Context menu). InDesign will redefine the style based on the selected text (see Figure 4-65).

Next Style. If you're typing in InDesign, and the paragraph you're in is tagged with the "Heading" style, you probably don't want the

FIGURE 4-65
Redefining a Paragraph Style

Change the formatting of an example paragraph tagged with the paragraph style you want to change. A "+" appears next to the style name in the Paragraph Styles panel.



Choose Redefine Style from the Paragraph Styles panel menu.

InDesign updates all instances of the style with the formatting of the selected paragraph.

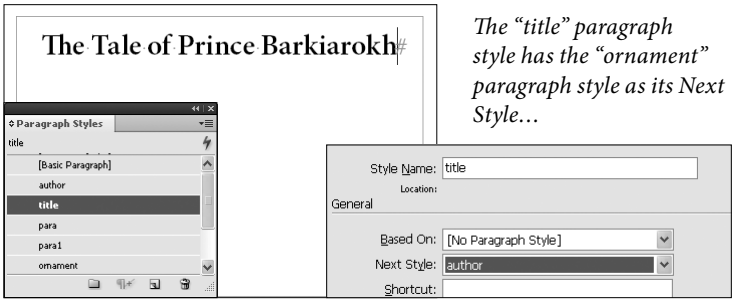
next paragraph to be tagged with "Heading" too, right? You can force InDesign to automatically change the subsequent paragraph style with the Next Style pop-up menu in the New Paragraph Style or Paragraph Style Options dialog box (see Figure 4-66). For example, if you want the subsequent paragraph to be "BodyText," then choose "BodyText" from the Next Style pop-up menu.

Note that this only works if the insertion point is at the end of a paragraph when you press Return/Enter. If the insertion point is anywhere else, you'll simply break that paragraph in two, and both new paragraphs will have the same style as the original one.

Using Next Style on Existing Text. What if you want to apply a sequence of paragraph styles to text you've already entered or imported? Select the range of text you want to format, then point at the first paragraph style you want to apply. Choose Apply *style name*

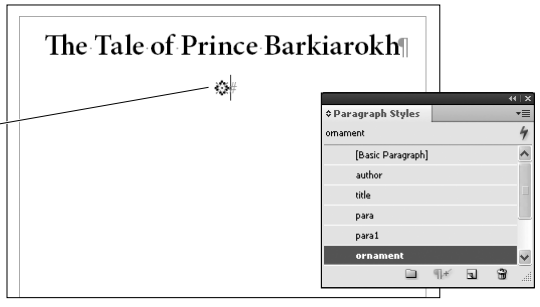
FIGURE 4-66
Next Style

In this example, we have set the Next Style option for each paragraph style to automatically apply the paragraph style we want when we press Return/Enter.



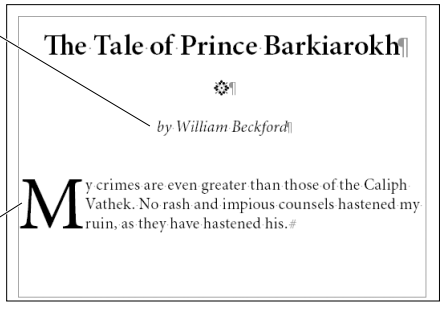
The "title" paragraph style has the "ornament" paragraph style as its Next Style…

…which means that, when we press Return/Enter, InDesign switches to that style.



The "ornament" style, in turn, has the paragraph style named "author" as its next style, so pressing Return/Enter as we type text switches to the "author" style.

When we enter text following the "author" paragraph style, InDesign applies the "para1" style, which includes drop cap formatting.



All of these paragraph style assignments take place as we type, so we don't have to reach for the Paragraph Styles panel.

Then Next Style from the context menu (where *style name* is the name of the style you want to apply). InDesign applies the sequence of paragraph styles (see Figure 4-67).

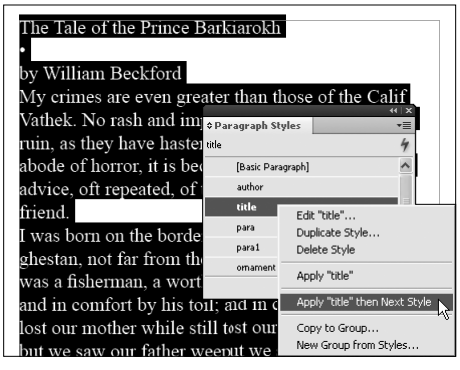
Selecting Unused Paragraph Styles. Choose Select All Unused from the Paragraph Styles panel menu to select all paragraph styles that are not applied to any text in the publication. Typically, the only reason you'd want to do this is to delete them all.

Deleting Paragraph Styles. To remove a paragraph style from your document, first deselect everything (press Command-Shift-A/Ctrl-Shift-A), then select the style name in the Paragraph Styles panel and choose Delete Styles from the panel's menu (or click the Delete Style button at the bottom of the panel). InDesign deletes the style.

InDesign gives you a choice of how to handle paragraphs already tagged with that style. You can choose No Paragraph Style to convert the formatting applied by the style to local formatting, or you can choose to apply another style. If you want to replace one style with another without deleting the original style, use the Find/Change dialog box (see Chapter 3, "Text").

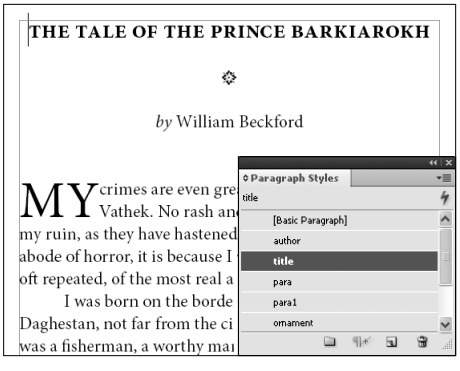
FIGURE 4-67
Applying Sequential Styles

Select the text you want to format. The first paragraph selected should be the start of the "chain" of styles you want to apply.



Choose Apply style name *Then Next Style from the Context menu (where* style name *is the name of the style).*

InDesign applies the styles, formatting each paragraph as specified by the Next Style setting of each style.



Note: You can also apply sequential styles by selecting a text frame with the Selection tool. When you do this, InDesign applies "next style" formatting to all of the text in the story, beginning with the first paragraph in the story.

Paragraph Styles and Nested Styles

As we mentioned in the discussion earlier in this chapter, nested styles really come into their own when combined with paragraph styles. Remember all of the work we did to set up the nested styles in our example? Now imagine putting all of that formatting power into a paragraph style. Imagine applying it with a single mouse click. Again, we think this stuff is very cool (see Figure 4-68).

FIGURE 4-68
Adding Nested Styles to a Paragraph Style

This raw text has been dumped into the document from a spreadsheet or database. Formatting a catalog full of this text would be very tedious, even if you used nested styles as local formatting.

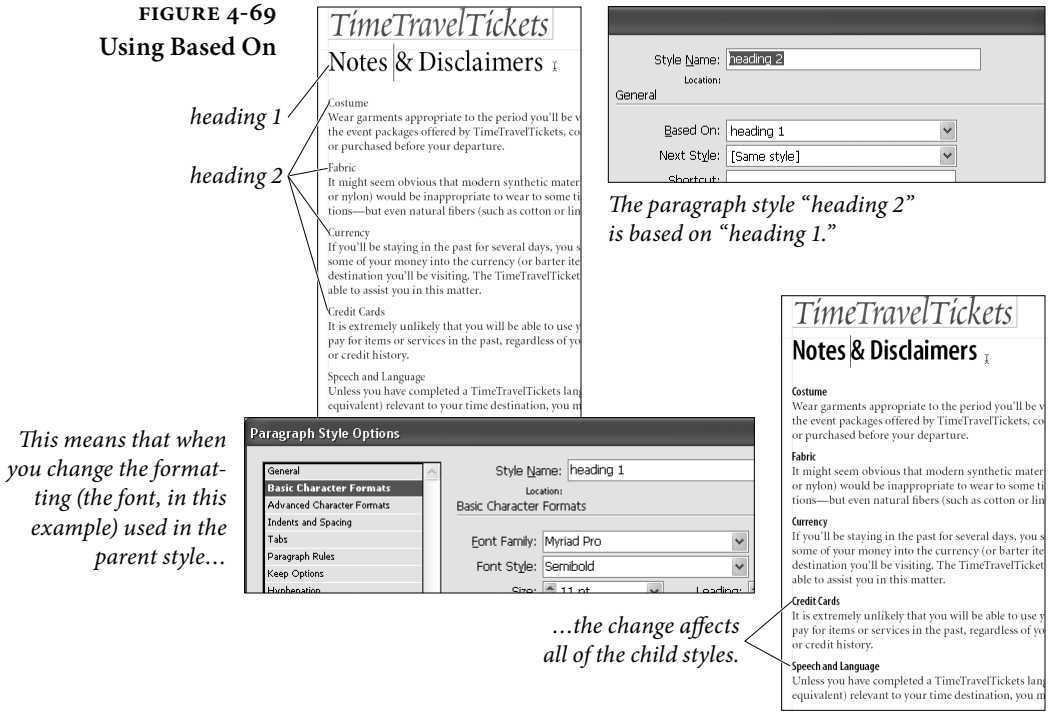
If you add the nested style definitions to a paragraph style, however, you can apply massive amounts of formatting with a single mouse click, as we've done here.

Creating Parent-Child Style Relationships

One powerful feature of InDesign's character and paragraph styles is the ability to base one style on another, also called parent-child relationships (see Figure 4-69). You can base a style on another one by choosing a style from the Based On pop-up menu in either the New Paragraph Style or the Paragraph Style Options dialog box (this works for either character or paragraph styles).

In this book, there are body text styles for paragraphs that follow headings, paragraphs that are in lists, and so on—but they're all based on one "parent" paragraph style. If we need to make the text size a half-point smaller, we could edit the parent style and the change would ripple throughout the book.

FIGURE 4-69
Using Based On



When one style is based on another, InDesign keeps track of the differences between the base style (the "parent") and the style based on it (the "child"). When you change the definition of the parent style, the changes will affect all of the attributes in the child style that are the same as the same attributes in the parent style.

Reset to Base. By the way, if your text cursor is in a paragraph when you create a new style, that paragraph's style becomes the "based on" style and any local formatting applied to the paragraph appears as the differences in the new style. If you don't want the local formatting, click the Reset to Base button. If you don't want your new style to be based on anything, make sure the Based On pop-up menu is set to No Paragraph Style.

Style Groups

Style Groups are a way to organize your paragraph and character styles. (They work with object styles and table styles, too, but that's not what we're talking about in this chapter.) Each style group is a folder into which you can put one or more styles. You can even nest one style group into another to create style hierarchies.

To create a style group, click the New Style Group button at the bottom of the Paragraph Styles or Character Styles panel (or choose the feature of the same name from the panel's menu). If you already

know which of your styles you want in your group, you can add them while creating the group by first selecting them first (see Figure 4-70).

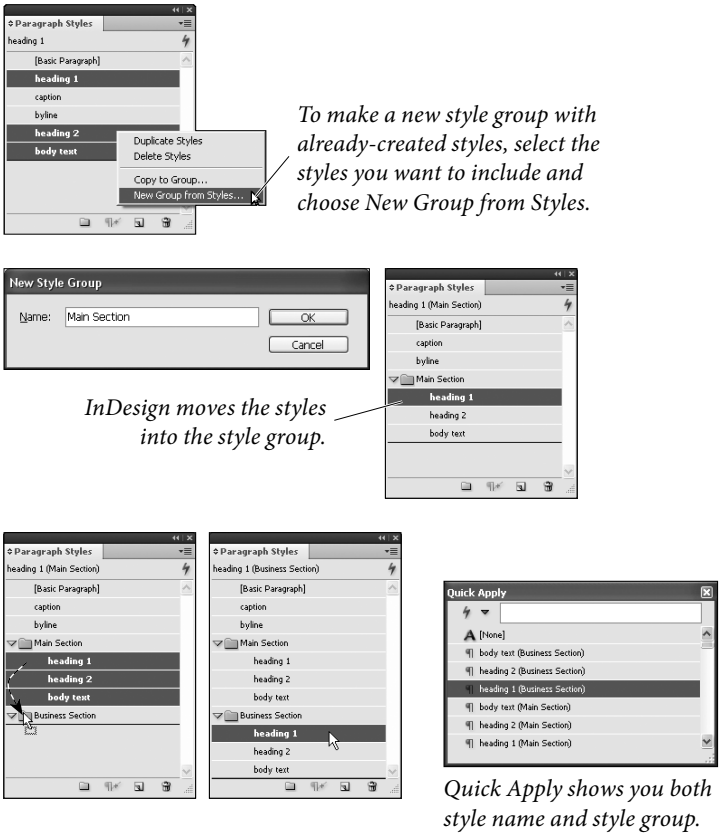
Once you've created a style group, you can move any style into it by dragging the style name in the panel into the group. It's very similar to working with folders in your operating system.

One of the coolest things about style groups is that you can have the same-named styles in more than one group. For example, you might make a "bodytext" paragraph style in a group called "Business Section" and another, differently-styled "bodytext" style in a group called "Entertainment Section". We're not saying you have to create templates like this, but it can be useful in certain situations.

To copy one or more selected styles to another group, choose Copy to Group from the panel menu, or Option/Alt-drag them over another folder.

What's Wrong with Style Groups? At first, style groups sound great, especially if you have dozens of styles in your document. But you need to be careful with them. First, if do have same-named styles

FIGURE 4-70
Creating Style Groups



with different definitions, it can be confusing *which* bodytext or *which* heading you're applying. This calls for eternal vigilance. It helps if you apply styles with Quick Apply, because the Quick Apply window displays both the style name and what style group its in.

The big problems appear if you need to export your documents as RTF (rich text format) for someone who is editing in Microsoft Word. Style groups will cause huge headaches because on export InDesign changes the style names (it adds the style group name). This isn't so bad except that when you reimport the RTF file, it's not smart enough to remap the style names back to the document's styles, so you end up with all your styles duplicated. It's horrible. We hope that Adobe will release a patch to fix this problem by the time you read this, but we're not holding our breath. Of course, in the meantime, it's a good excuse to get your editors to use InCopy instead.

Copying Styles from Other Publications

One of the great things about character and paragraph styles is that you can use them to unify standard formatting across a range of publications—the chapters of this book, for example. While you can't define a "master" style sheet and have all publications get their style definitions from it (as you can in FrameMaker), you can easily copy styles from one InDesign publication to another.

- To copy character styles from another publication, choose Load Character Styles from the Character Styles panel menu. InDesign displays the Open a File dialog box. Locate and select the InDesign publication file containing the styles you want and click the Open button. InDesign copies the character styles from that publication into the current document.
- To copy paragraph styles from one publication to another choose Load Paragraph Styles from the Paragraph Styles panel menu.
- To import both character and paragraph styles from another publication, choose Load All Text Styles from the panel menu of the Character Styles panel or the Paragraph Styles panel.

When you import styles that have the same name as styles that already exist in the publication, InDesign overrides the attributes of the existing styles with the attributes of the incoming styles.

You can also move styles by copying text tagged with the styles you want from one publication and pasting it into another document

(or dragging a text frame from one document into another). If the styles do not exist in the document you've pasted the text into, InDesign adds them. If the styles already exist, InDesign overrides the style definitions in the incoming text with the style definitions of the existing styles.

You can also synchronize style sheets among all the documents in a book when you use the Book panel, which we talk about in Chapter 8, "Long Documents."

Styles from imported text files. When you import a Microsoft Word or RTF file that includes paragraph or character styles that don't exist in the InDesign publication, those styles get added to the Character Styles and Paragraph Styles panels. You can always tell one of these styles from those created in InDesign because the panels display a little gray floppy disk icon next to the style name.

Libraries of Styles. One of our favorite uses for libraries (see "Library panel" in Chapter 1, "Workspace") is to save paragraph and character styles that we use in multiple documents. In a small text frame, we type a few words (usually the name of the style) and then apply one or more styles to them. Then we drag the text frame into a library (select Library from the New submenu, under the File menu, if you haven't already made one) and double-click on the library thumbnail to give it a name and description. Later, when we need that style in some other document, we can open the library file, drag that text frame into our document, and then delete the text frame—the styles remain. Of course, this works with libraries of color swatches, too.

Styles from alternate layouts. When you create an alternate layout, you can select the "Copy Text Styles to New Styles Group" option. This creates all the text styles in a new styles group so that you can easily change the styles to conform to the different layout. In fact, you even go back and base the styles in the child layout on the styles in the parent layout to establish a connection (see "Alternate Layouts" in Chapter 2, "Page Layout").

Mapped styles from Content Placer tool. When you use the Content Collector/Content Placer tools to copy objects from one publication to another, you can specify style mapping options for text and table styles (see "Copying and Linking Objects" in Chapter 7, "Importing and Exporting").

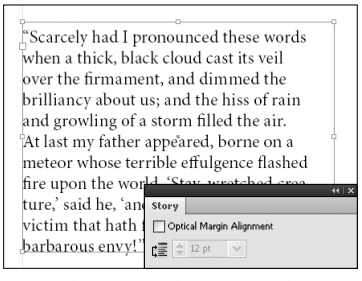
Optical Margin Alignment

Ever since Gutenberg set out to print his Bible, typesetters have looked for ways to "balance" the edges of columns of text—particularly lines ending or beginning with punctuation. Because the eye doesn't "see" punctuation, it can sometimes appear that the left or right edges of some columns of type (especially justified type) are misaligned. Some other programs compensate for this problem by using a "hanging punctuation" feature, which pushes certain punctuation characters outside the text column. But there's more to making the edges of a column look even than just punctuation. Some characters can create a "ragged" look all by themselves—think of a "W," at the beginning of a line, for example.

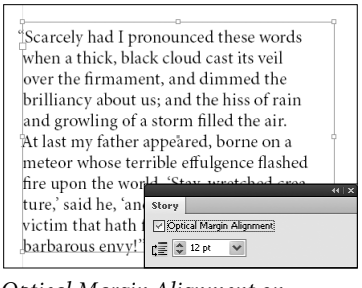
When you select an InDesign story (with either the Selection or the Type tool) and turn on the Optical Margin Alignment option in the Story panel (choose Story from the Type menu to display the Story panel), the program balances the edges of the columns based on the appearance of *all* of the characters at the beginning or end of the lines in the column. This adjustment makes the columns appear more even—even though it sometimes means that characters are extending *beyond* the edges of the column (see Figure 4-71).

The amount that InDesign "hangs" a character outside the text column depends on the setting you enter in the Base Size field of

FIGURE 4-71
Optical Margin Alignment

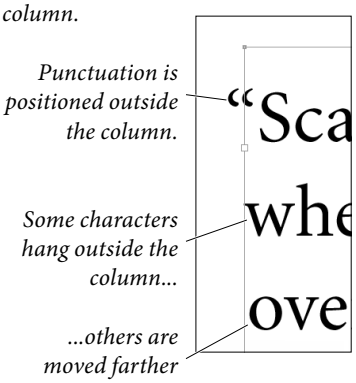


Optical Margin Alignment off



Optical Margin Alignment on

In this close-up view, you can clearly see the way that InDesign adjusts the characters at the edge of the text column.



Punctuation is positioned outside the column.

Some characters hang outside the column...

...others are moved farther inside the column.

the Story panel (that's the field with the icon that looks like it would make a drop cap). In general, you should enter the point size of your body text in this field.

Unfortunately, it turns out that many designers don't like the look of Optical Margin Alignment. It's not that the feature is flawed; it's that designers (especially younger folks) have become so accustomed to their type lining up with a particular guide or ruler that they think it's wrong to have type inside or outside that (non-printing) line. Nevertheless, we encourage you to try turning it on and seeing how your readers like it—we think they'll find the text easier to read.

Ignore Optical Margin. Even if you do like Optical Margin Alignment, there's a good chance that you'll occasionally find a paragraph or two that you wish it wouldn't apply to. For example, monospaced code listings should not be optically aligned—that defeats the purpose of using a monospaced font. Fortunately, you have the option to turn off Optical Margin Alignment on a paragraph by paragraph basis or in a paragraph style.

To turn it off for one or more selected paragraphs, choose Ignore Optical Margin from the Control panel or Paragraph panel menu. To disable it in a paragraph style, turn on the Ignore Optical Margin checkbox in the Indents and Spacing pane of the Paragraph Style Options dialog box.

An Old Typesetter Never…

Late night. The sound of the espresso machine in the kitchen about to reach critical mass and melt down, destroying the office and civilization as we know it. The office is different, the equipment and the coffee are better, but we still seem to be up late at night setting type.

And, to tell you the truth, we're not sure we would have it any other way.

INDEX

* (asterisks), 4
@ (at signs), 534
< > (angle brackets), 238, 247, 748
‘ (apostrophes), 39–40, 197, 200
! (exclamation marks), 485
“ (left double quotes), 39–40, 50, 197
‘ (left single quotes), 39–40, 50
( ) parentheses, 114, 239
+ (plus signs), 156, 160, 315–316, 325
? (question marks), 485
“ (quotation marks). *See* quotation marks (“)
” (right double quotes), 39–40, 50, 197
’ (right single quotes), 39–40, 50
[ ] (square brackets), 85, 238, 271
~ (tildes), 216
0 setline-width strokes, 357
1.1.1-style lists, 311
2-position rollovers, 723
2-sided printing, 675
3D Ribbon path text option, 457
5%-400% views, 63

A

above line frames, 434. *See also* inline frames
above line objects, 441–442
Absolute Colorimetric intent, 635
absolute page numbering, 36, 650
absolute positioning, 584
accepting changes, 210
accessibility features, 518–519, 530–531, 748
accuracy of screen color. *See* color management
accursed files, 75
ACE CMS system, 635
Acrobat. *See* Adobe Acrobat; PDF graphics and files
actions for buttons, 719–722, 724
activated TOCs and indexes, 520
active publication windows, 8
ActiveWorkspace.xml file, 35
Actual Size 100% view, 63
Actual Text Source options, 530–531
adaptive layouts, eBook support, 753
Add button (dictionaries), 215
Add Objects to Visible State button, 729
Add Page button, 82–83, 95
Add Pages To pop-up menu, 41
Add path operation, 352, 353
Add Point tool, 17, 18, 21
Add to Autocorrect List dialog box, 217
Add Untagged Items command, 544
Added Text option, 53
AddGuides script, 124, 698
AddPoints script, 698
Adjust Dashes command, 361–362
Adjust Gaps command, 361–362, 363
Adjust Scaling Percentage option, 37, 579, 580, 588
Adjust Spacing Automatically... option, 41
Adjust View Settings preferences settings, 55–56
adjusting layouts
  alternate layouts, 110–114
  liquid page rules, 106–110
  master pages, 99–100
  overview, 103–105
AdjustLayout script, 698
Adobe Acrobat
  Acrobat layers, 742
  compatibility of PDF files, 517
  layers option, 742
  PDF. *See* PDF graphics and files
  transparency and, 374
Adobe Bridge
  launching, 4
  metadata from, 190, 504
  Mini Bridge, 6
  revealing linked files in, 490
  snippets in, 532
Adobe CMS system, 635
Adobe Connect, 741
Adobe Content Viewer, 740, 762, 764
Adobe Corporation, notes for, 444
Adobe Creative Cloud, 760
Adobe Creative Suite, 503
Adobe Digital Editions, 752–753
Adobe Dreamweaver, 755, 757, 759
Adobe Edge, 756, 765
Adobe EPUB resources, 755
Adobe IDs, 761–762
Adobe Illustrator. *See* Illustrator graphics
Adobe In-RIP trapping option, 659
Adobe InCopy, 210, 212–213, 227
Adobe InDesign Breakthroughs, 447
Adobe InDesign Scripting Guide and Tutorial, 697, 703
Adobe Media Encoder, 729
Adobe Paragraph Composer, 278, 298, 303
Adobe PDF Preset pop-up menu (export styles), 516
Adobe PDF Presets dialog box, 528–530
Adobe PDF Print Engine, 374, 648, 665, 678
Adobe Photoshop. *See* Photoshop graphics
Adobe RGB color model, 631, 632
Adobe Single Line Composer, 298
Advanced pane (HTML Export Options dialog box), 759–760
Advanced pane (Print dialog box), 666–668

Advanced Type Preferences dialog box, 42
After Entry page number option, 557
agates, 16
AI files. *See* Illustrator graphics
AICB setting (Illustrator), 468
AIF or AIFF files, 729
alert icon, 233, 485, 494
aliasing spot colors, 625, 626
Align Away from Spine option, 278
Align options, path text, 458, 460
Align panel, 11, 597–598
Align Stroke... options, 357–358
Align to Baseline Grid button, 287
Align To Character tab stops, 283
Align Towards Spine option, 278
aligning objects
  above-line objects, 441–442
  captions, 464
  frame contents, 502–503
  Gap tool, 20, 599–601
  grids of objects, 596–597
  for HTML export, 756
  images in eBooks, 754
  to Key objects, 597
  liquid page rules and, 110
  multi-state objects, 728
  overview, 597–598
  Smart Guides, 128–130
aligning strokes, 357–358
aligning Tabs panel, 283
aligning text
  to baseline grid, 286–289
  captions, 464
  optical margin alignment, 333–334
  paragraph formatting, 278
  path text, 458, 460
  tabs and tab stops, 281–286
alignment buttons, 278
Alignment option, 502–503
AlignToPage script, 698
all caps formatting, 264–265
All Pages field, 649
All Printer's Marks option, 655
Allow Fast Saves option (Word), 199
Allow Graphics and Groups to Resize option, 105
Allow Object-Level Display Settings feature, 478
Allow Pages to Shuffle feature, 85–86
Allow Ruler Guides to Move option, 105
Allow Selected Spread to Shuffle option, 85
Allow Split Footnotes option, 222
Alpha Channel import option, 479
alpha channels, 479, 510
alphabetizing
  cross-references, 567
  index entries, 562
  table of contents entries, 557
Alt Text (alternative text) options, 530
Alternate Layout header, 79, 80, 81
alternate layouts
  creating, 110–114
  DPS folios, 762
  eBook support, 753
  in Folio Builder, 763
  Liquid HTML5 pagination options, 114
  multiple windows displaying, 8
  in Pages panel, 79, 80, 81
  text styles in, 332
Alternates for Selection command, 172
alternating fills in tables, 421–422
Alternating Pattern menu, 421–422
Always Subset Fonts... option, 36
Amazon Kindle, 110, 112, 745, 755, 760–766
anchor markers, 436, 446
anchor points. *See* points
anchored boxes. *See* inline frames
Anchored Object Options dialog box, 442
anchored objects. *See also* inline frames
  anchor markers, 436, 446
  characteristics of, 434–436
  creating, 442–448
  drop caps, 447
  eBook graphics, 747, 749
  exporting to HTML, 749, 757
  graphics and captions, 747, 749
  groups, 750
  hanging side heads, 448
  locking position, 446
  positioning, 444–446
  Reference Point proxies, 444
  removing, 441
  selecting, 441
  unanchoring, 441
  wrapping text around, 446–447
anchors. *See* anchored objects; cross references; destinations (hyperlinks)
Android devices, 110, 112, 760–766
angle brackets (< >), 238, 247, 748
angles
  drop shadows, 381
  feathering, 386
  halftone screens, 659–661
Animate pop-up menu, 734–735
animation
  Adobe Edge files, 756, 765
  Animation panel settings, 734–735
  AnimationEncyclopedia script, 698
  audio and video, 729–733
  buttons and, 721, 736
  complex, 736–737
  creating, 733–734
  customizing, 736
  delaying, 737
  DPS issues and support, 762, 763
  exporting to Flash files, 745
  fades, 735
  Flash Professional, 738
  hiding or showing objects, 735
  importing presets, 738
  interactive file format support, 711
  looping, 737
  motion presets, 734, 738
  multiple objects, 736–737
  order of, 737
  in PDF files, 738
  playing multiple effects at once, 737
  previewing, 740–741
  printing animated objects, 734–735
  speed, 734
  Timing panel, 735, 737
  transparency and, 735
Animation action, 721
Animation panel, 734–735
AnimationEncyclopedia script, 698
ANSI encoding, 247
anti-aliasing, 54, 57, 58, 477, 512
apologies by authors, 293
apostrophes ('), 39–40, 197, 200

Appearance of Black Preferences dialog box, 58–59
Appearance Only option, 743
Appearance pop-up menu, 224
Apple ColorSync system, 628
Apple devices. *See* IOS devices; iPads; iPhones
Apple iBooks, 745, 750, 755
Apple iTunes, 729
Apple Store, 755, 760, 762
AppleScript, 695–696, 704
Application Bar, 3, 4, 5
Application Built-In trapping option, 659
application defaults, 62
Application Frame option, 2
application-level preferences, 35–36
Apply Color button, 18, 27
Apply Gradient button, 18, 27, 368
Apply Leading to Entire Paragraphs option, 40, 254
Apply Master dialog box, 99
Apply Master to Pages command, 99
Apply None button, 18, 27
Apply Photoshop Clipping Path option, 478–479, 481
Apply Style to Selection option, 318
Apply to Content option, 37, 579, 580
apps (Digital Publishing Suite), 762, 764, 766
Arabic numerals, 90, 92
arithmetic, 16
Arrange Document pop-up menu, 4
arranging objects. *See also* order of items
  aligning objects, 597–598, 698
  contents of frames, 502–503
  distributing objects, 598–601
  distributing table rows or columns, 405
  EPUB and HTML export. *See* order of items
  pages in spreads, 84–86
  path operations, 352
arrays of objects (Grid Mode), 596–597
arrow keys, 46, 585
arrowheads, 360, 361
arrows on tool icons, 18
art boards, 481–482
Article view, 763
articles
  animation in, 733
  creating, 762–765
  items in, 747
  layouts in, 762
  liquid HTML, 762
  liquid or static, 762
  primary text frames and, 101
  tab order in PDF files, 743
  uploading to cloud, 762
Articles panel, 746–747, 752, 756, 758
Artifact tag, 519, 530, 544
AS files, 696
ascenders in path text, 458, 460
Ascent baseline option, 155, 438
ASCII encoding, 247
ASCII files, exporting, 514
ASE files, 611
Asian fonts, embedding, 525
aspect ratios, devices, 765
Assign Profiles dialog box, 636, 637
asterisks (*), 4
At End of Layout reflow option, 114
atomic regions, rasterizing, 683
attributes
  formatting, 232–234
  object find and replace, 144–146
  XHTML CSS files, 759
Attributes panel, 11
AU files, 729
audio files
  button actions for, 721
  converting to importable formats, 729
  embedding in PDF files, 520, 710
  exporting interactive documents, 743
  exporting to DPS files, 763
  exporting to EPUB, 752
  exporting to Flash files, 745
  exporting to HTML, 757
  importing and playing, 729
  interactive file format support, 711
  Media panel options, 732–733
  posters, 732–733
  previewing, 740–741
  streaming audio, 731
authors
  bewildered, 602
  caption metadata, 464
  metadata in DPS files, 763
  metadata in eBooks, 753
auto-bulleted lists, 752. *See also* bullets and bulleted lists
Auto-Collapse Icon Panels option, 38
Auto-Fit option, 110, 502
Auto Justified Tiling option, 654
Auto leading, 255, 303, 438, 439
auto-numbering, 752. *See also* numbering
Auto Page Number command, 92
Auto Refresh Highlight option, 684
Auto-Show Hidden Panels option, 38
Auto-Size Text Frames option, 110
Auto-Size text options, 156–157
Autocorrect feature, 52, 53, 184, 217–218
Autocorrect Preferences dialog box, 52, 53
autoflow text flow, 68, 166, 167
Autoflow text place icon, 68
automatic bullets. *See* bullets and bulleted lists
Automatic Document Conversion option, 548
automatic kerning, 258–260
automatic page numbering, 92–93, 548, 549, 552
Automatic reflow option, 114
automatic text flow, 68, 166, 167
Automatic Tiling option, 654
automatic trapping methods, 626–627
Automatic XML tagging, 749
Automatically Adjust to Fit Marks and Bleeds option, 674
Automatically Use Correct Optical Size option, 40
Automatication.com, 484
Available document status icons, 549
Average Downsample option, 522
AVI files, 729, 732

B

background color. *See* transparency

Background Tasks panel, 27
backing up workspace files, 35
backslashes, 238
backward compatibility
of files, 532
badges in Content
Conveyor, 496, 497
Balance Columns option, 151
Balance Ragged Lines
option, 303–304
bandages, ancient page
layout and, 17
Barnes & Noble Nook, 745.
See also devices (mobile,
reading, tablet); Digital
Publishing Suite; eReaders
base colors, 623
Based on Master pop-up menu, 97
baseline grid
aligning paragraphs to, 286–289
custom baseline grids, 287
exporting PDF files, 520
hiding and displaying,
121, 130–131
overview, 47
printing, 651
Snap to Guides command, 131
Baseline Grid preferences
settings, 47
baseline JPEG images, 512
Baseline Shift field, 47
baselines of text
aligning path text, 458, 460
baseline shift, 42, 262–
263, 269–270
first baseline position, 155–156
inline frames in text, 439–440
leading and, 254–255
Basic Feather effect, 384–385
Basic Graphics Frame
object style, 451
Basic Paragraph style, 321–322
basic shapes, drawing, 336–337
Basic Text Frame object style, 451
battleship Nadesico, 378
BBEdit, 246
beer, scripts and, 694
Before and After Image option, 751
Before Entry page number
option, 557
behaviors of buttons, 719–722
Bermuda Triangle of
page layout, 389
Between Entry and Page
Number option, 557
between tags, finding text
that is, 239–240, 243
Bevel effect, 383, 384
Beveled Join option, 358
Bezier paths, 337
Bi-directional links, 486
bi-level images (monochrome),
476, 521, 663
Bicubic Downsample option, 522
BIG5 encoding, 247
binary files, 514
bitmap graphics
choices for file formats, 472
compression options, 521–522
display performance settings, 56
importing, 478–480
OPI replacement, 666–667
print settings, 662–664
pros and cons of, 473–474
raster images, 473–474, 666
transparency and, 682
black and white art, 476, 521,
522, 523, 663, 682
black background with
white text, 261
black inks. *See also* inks
appearance of black, 58–59
black point compensation
setting, 636
managing color, 630
matching ink on screen,
58–59, 639–640
overprinting, 59, 677
rich blacks, 58–59
black point compensation
setting, 636
blank lines in imported
data files, 539
blank pages, printing, 651
blank space between
printed pages, 652
Blatner, David
"Blatner" as common
household word, 215
cross references and
tiny hearts, 191
difficulties with
pronunciation, 633
distracting grids and, 131
drawing abilities of, 351
dreams about formatting
and organizational
goodness, 704
as driven batty by Smart
Guides, 130
eBook evangelism, 745
EPUB Secrets Web site, 755
fondness for 16-point
Georgia, 208
geometric art obsession, 706
HTML editing habits, 760
idiosyncratic bookmarking, 718
indexer's eternal affection
towards, 574
left-leaning yet flattening-far-
right tendencies of, 682
as middle-of-the-road guy, 55
next-odd-page madness
and, 553
as not getting out enough, 704
old style numeral disagreements
with Ole, 274
other books by, 447, 476, 628
preferences for cubits, 45
risky glyph-scaling visibility
and, 302–303
as "select-challenged," 118
side head self-experimentation
and, 448
strong stomach of, save
for runts, 300
tab tzarism of, 282
as taking "the hard way"
because he can, 447
as triumphant in legal
wrangling over
templates, 76
troubles with tables, 397
unsatisfied expectations for
ragged lines, 303
as young pup publisher
long ago, 709
Bleed Between Pages
option, 673–674
Bleed fields (EPS exports), 514
bleed marks, 655, 670
Bleed Marks option, 655
Bleed setting, 657
bleeds
bleed areas, 72
bleed marks, 655, 670
bleed options, 70
booklets, 673–674
cropping PDF files to, 482

facing pages and, 86
JPEG exports, 512
print settings, 657
blending modes, 375–377, 387
blends (gradient fills). *See* gradients and gradient fills
blindness, overuse of effects and, 379
blinking cursors, 55, 209
Bloat effect, 699
Block cursors, 55, 208–209
block level text, 748
blue-green highlights, 44
blurring
On Blur events, 719
drop shadows, 381–383
text, 387–388
blurry animated objects, 735
BMPs. *See* bitmap graphics
bold type, 257, 755
book covers, 87
Book Page Numbering Options dialog box, 552
Book panel, 549–550. *See also* books
Booklet Type pop-up menu, 672–673
booklets, 671–675
bookmarks, 519–520, 711, 718, 757, 763
Bookmarks panel, 718
books
adding documents to, 547–548
Book panel, 546, 547
chapter numbering in, 553–554
converting from earlier versions, 548
creating, 546
document status icons, 549–550
editing documents in, 548–549
EPUB exports, 554, 753
exporting as PDF files, 554
finding text in multiple files, 228
generating indexes for, 570–574
managing file revisions, 548, 549
master documents, 551
moving documents in, 547
networked workgroup document management, 550
not exported to HTML, 757
organizing documents in, 547
overview, 546
page numbering, 546, 548, 549, 552–553
printing, 554
removing files from, 547–548
renumbering pages, 546, 548, 549
section numbering, 552, 553–554
synchronizing files, 546, 551–552
tables of contents. *See* tables of contents
tips and guidelines for, 548–549
updating chapter numbers, 553–554
bookshelves in eReaders, 750
borders
around cells, 414–416
around paragraphs, 411, 412
around table cells, 413–416
around tables, 421
EPUB and HTML export, 750
Bottom vertical justification method, 154
bounding boxes
cropping PDF files to, 482
exporting EPS graphics with, 514
wrapping text around, 431
boxes
around cells, 414–416
around paragraphs, 411, 412
displaying graphics as, 477
printing graphics as, 664
braces ({ }), 238
brackets, angle (< >), 247
brackets, square ([ ]), 85, 238, 271
Break Link to Style command, 453
BreakFrame script, 698
breaking links
to files, 484–485
between object and style definitions, 453
between text and style definitions, 319
between text frames, 162–163, 164, 165
breaks
column breaks, 43, 304–306
entering, 169, 170
inserting special characters, 169, 170
page breaks, 43, 198, 304–306
preventing line breaks in text, 270
Bridge. *See* Adobe Bridge
Bring Forward command, 132–133
Bring to Front command, 132
Bringhurst, Bob
"Bringhurst" as common household word, 215
cross references and tiny hearts, 191
DPS Tips app, 764
dreams about formatting and organizational goodness, 704
geometric art obsession, 706
indexer's eternal affection towards, 574
left-leaning yet flattening-far-right tendencies of, 682
niece's disdain for page curls, 743
as not getting out enough, 704
strong stomach of, save for runts, 300
tab tzarism of, 282
Broback, Steve, 62
brochures, 672–673
Brown, Russell, 376
browsers
browser-safe colors, 632
previewing interactive files in, 740
bubble sort algorithm script, 700
bugs, updating merged data and, 540
building
indexes, 570–574
tables of contents, 559
built-in presets. *See* presets
bullets and bulleted lists
bullet characters, 307, 308–309
converting bullets to normal text, 314
creating, 306–309
eBook options, 753, 754
finding glyphs, 242–245
hanging indent formatting, 280–281
HTML exports, 757, 758
lurking invisible fonts and, 276
named lists, 311–314
paragraph styles and, 314
positioning bullets, 307
removing bullets, 314

B

Bullets and Numbering dialog box, 305–314
Bunting, Fred, 628
business cards, 87
Butt cap option, 358
Button Value option, 727
buttons
  animation and, 736
  Buttons and Forms panel, 719–724
  descriptions, 726
  DPS files, 710, 763
  exported to Flash files, 745
  exporting interactive files, 743
  form functions, 726
  hidden, 724
  interactive file support, 711
  multi-state objects, 728
  non-printing, 726
  PDF or SWF files, 520, 719–724, 743–744
  previewing, 740–741
  printable, 726
  rollovers and states, 722–723
  slide show navigation, 729
  tab order, 743
  tooltips for, 726
  video navigation points, 732
Buttons and Forms panel
  buttons, 719–724
  forms, 724–726

C

C, C#, C++, etc., 697
c shortcut, 463
calibrating devices, 628, 629
Calibre, 753, 755
Cap Height option, 155, 438
Cap options, 358
capitalized words. *See also* case of characters
  autocorrecting cap errors, 217
  hyphenation, 300
  index entries, 570
capitals. *See* case of characters
Caption Setup dialog box, 463, 464
captions
  anchoring, 750
  creating and updating, 463–466
  EPUB and HTML export tips, 749
  metadata, 464, 504
  static, 465–466
  text variables, 175, 178, 187–190
  troubleshooting, 466
carriage returns
  as defining paragraphs, 276
  importing text-only files, 199, 200
  leading and, 256
  removing with GREP methods, 243
  showing hidden characters, 205
  space before and after vs., 286
Cascade command, 8
Cascading Style Sheets. *See* CSS files
case of characters. *See also* capitalized words
  all caps formatting, 264–265
  case in find/change options, 228
  changing, 265–266
  character formatting, 265–266
  small caps, 42, 261, 264–265, 272
  text variable numbering, 178
  tracking and, 261
Case Sensitive option, 228
catalogs of images, 699
caterpillars, transformation and, 602
Caution icon, 485
cave-dwelling EDLIN-using uncles, 246
CCITT compression, 522
Cell Alignment setting, 201
Cell Options dialog box, 407, 413–420
Cell Proxy, 415–416
Cell Range setting, 201
cell styles, 423–424, 426, 496, 497–498
Cell Styles panel, 426
cells in tables
  border strokes, 413–416
  Cell Proxy, 415–416
  creating styles, 423–428
  defined, 395, 396
  diagonal lines, 419–420
  entering tab characters, 400
  fills or strokes, 413–420
  gradients, 418–419
  graphics in cells, 400, 402
  height or width, 399, 406–407
  importing cell styles, 428
  including styles in table styles, 424
  mapping cell styles, 496, 497–498
  merging, 410–411
  overriding cell styles, 427
  overset text, 398
  rotating, 411, 412
  selecting cells, 399–400
  selecting text in cells, 401
  splitting, 411
Center Content command, 500, 502
Center in Frame option, 539
center-justified text alignment, 278
center of rotation, 23
center of transformation, 576, 577, 581
center points of gradients, 368, 369
Center vertical justification method, 153
centered paragraph alignment, 278
centered tab stops, 282–283
centerfolds, 87
centering
  contents in frames, 500, 502
  liquid page rules for, 106–107
Change All button, 214, 230
Change Bars option, 54
Change button, 214, 230
Change Case command, 265–266
Change Case option, 178
Change/Find button, 230
Change Format Settings dialog box, 232
Change Object Format Options dialog box, 145–146
Change To field, 230
change tracking. *See* tracking changes
Chapter Number variable, 175, 178
chapter numbering, 175, 178, 553–554
chapters in eBooks, 751
character encodings, 247, 543
character formatting. *See also* paragraph formatting
  all caps formatting, 264–265
  applying to all characters, 277
  baseline shift, 262–263
  case of characters, 265–266
  Character panel, 11, 251
  Control panel, 251
  copying (Eyedropper tool), 24, 25
  filling characters, 276, 277

font selection, 251–253
fractions, 271–272
horizontal scaling, 262
kerning, 258–260
language assignment, 263–264
leading. *See* leading
ligatures, 269, 272
line breaks, preventing, 270
numerals, 272, 274–275
OpenType fonts and, 270–275
outlining, 276, 277
overview, 251
point size, 253–254
removing space underlines, 266
skewing, 263, 264
small caps, 42, 261, 264–265
strikethrough, 268–269
stroking characters, 276, 277
styles. *See* character styles
super- and subscript, 42, 269–270, 273–274
swash characters, 272
titling characters, 272
tracking, 260–262
underlining, 266–267
vertical scaling, 262
character ligatures, 171, 226, 269, 271, 272
Character panel, 11, 251. *See also* character formatting
character sets, 199, 238
Character Settings preferences, 42
Character Style option, 220
Character Style Options dialog box, 756
character styles
alternate layout style groups, 113
alternate layouts, 332
applying to text, 319–320
basing on example text, 317–318
basing on existing styles, 328–329
bulleted lists, 307
changing fonts in, 276
Character Styles panel, 11, 317, 331
copying from other files, 331–332
creating, 317–318, 698
deleting attributes of, 319
deleting styles, 321
deleting text with specified styles, 236
drop cap styles, 291
editing, 320
external CSS files and, 760
formatting attributes and, 318
hyperlinks, 713, 715
index styles, 573
interaction with paragraph styles, 323, 324
mapping for eBooks, 748
mapping for HTML export, 756
mapping with Content Conveyor, 332, 496, 497–498
nested styles, 290–297
numbered lists, 311
overview, 316–317
parent-child relationships, 328–329
vs. QuarkXPress styles, 318
Quick Apply feature, 460–463
redefining, 320–321
removing from text, 319, 323, 324
resetting to base styles, 329
saving in libraries, 332
style groups, 329–331
synchronizing in book files, 551–552
table of contents styles, 557
tagged PDFs and, 531
tagged text and, 202
Character Styles panel, 11, 317, 331, 748
characterizing devices, 628, 629
characters
applying colors to, 622
bullets, 307–309
converting to outlines, 432–434, 683
escaping, 239
finding and replacing. *See* finding and replacing
formatting. *See* character formatting
hidden, 205
highlighting substituted glyphs, 44
importing text-only files, 199
inline frames as, 436
leading. *See* leading
nested style metacharacters, 292
special or symbol. *See* special characters
styles. *See* character styles
subsets of, in fonts, 36
tab leaders, 285–286
tables of contents leaders, 557
transparency flattener and, 683
Unicode values, 27
wildcard metacharacters, 229–230
charts, 200
Chavez, Conrad, 476, 628
cheating software, 373
check boxes (forms), 725, 727
Check In/Check Out commands, 491
Check Links Before Opening Document option, 60, 491
Check Spelling panel, 11, 213–218
checkerboard page icons, 679
checking links, 60, 491
checking spelling
adding or removing words from dictionary, 215–216, 217
autocorrecting errors, 217–218
Check Spelling panel, 11, 213–218
deleted text, 54
dictionary options, 49–51
dynamic spelling, 51, 216–217, 218
hyphenation points, 215–216
including note text, 52
language and character formatting, 263–264
preferences, 51–52
child layouts, 114
child linked objects, 493–494, 496
child links in alternate layouts, 113
child master spreads, 97, 98
child pages in alternate layouts, 112
child style documents, 497
Chinese history and printing, 645
Chinese text, 42
Choke option in feathering, 384
cicero override abbreviation, 16
circles, drawing, 22
circles, red, 485
classes (tags), 748, 749
cleaning imported files, 199–200
Clear Attributes Not Defined by Style button or command, 452
Clear Form action, 721
Clear Form button, 726
Clear Overrides command, 427
clearing forms, 721, 726

C

clearing overrides
layer visibility and, 483, 506–507
local text formatting, 323, 324, 704
master page items and, 102
object formatting, 452–453
paragraph style scripts, 704
table formatting, 427
Clip Complex Regions option, 683
Clipboard, 61, 234
Clipboard Preferences dialog box, 61
clipping movie frames, 733
Clipping Path dialog box, 507–510
clipping paths
applying to graphics, 478–479
compared to transparency, 508
converting to frames, 510
creating, 507–510
flattening methods, 678
importing EPS files with, 481
vs. path operations, 352
removing, 510
selecting, 508–509
close (>) angle brackets, 247
close boxes and buttons, 3, 4
Close Path button, 354
closed paths, 344–346, 351, 354
closing
open paths, 344–345
panels, 10
windows, 4, 9
cloud publishing, 760–763
CMYK color model. *See also* color management; color models
choosing models, 605–606, 621
CMYK working space, 632–633, 636
color management policies, 634
color management settings, 631
composites and separations, 657–658
converting EPS images to, 513
converting RGB images to, 523
cross-rendering, 642
EPS files, 513, 644
JPEG files, 512
PDF, PDF/X... files, 516, 642–644
preserving numbers, 639, 641–642
presets, 631
switching to, 621
Coated GRACoL setting, 633
coated papers, 629, 636
collaboration tools, 550
Collapse All Footnotes command, 208
collapsing
footnotes, 208
layer display, 135–136
notes, 212
panels, 10
Collate option, 649
Collect All Threaded Frames option, 496
collecting form data, 722
color
applying
basic techniques, 18, 27, 622–623
behind paragraphs, 392–393
to cell borders, 414–416
to drop shadows, 381
to fills, 366–367, 607
to gaps in strokes, 360, 361
to graphics, 510–511, 622–623
to objects or text, 11, 27, 622–623
to page thumbnails, 81
to strokes, 607
in tables, 413–420
checking in Preflight, 688
Color panel, 11, 366–367, 606, 620–621
color spectrum, 604
composite color, 657–658
compressed ranges of, 639–640
copying with Eyedropper tool, 24, 25
finding and replacing, 144–146
gamuts, 604, 611, 621, 635–636
gradients. *See* gradients and gradient fills
image resolution and, 521
ink list, 605, 661
Ink Manager. *See* Ink Manager
of interface elements
change bars, 54
change tracking markups, 198
composition issue highlights, 42–44
conditional text, 224
dynamic spelling, 51, 217
grids, 47
guides, 48, 126
layers, 136, 138
menu items, 33
notes, 52
Story Editor window, 54, 208
text changes, 53
Kuler panel, 623
matching. *See* color management
mixed ink swatches, 614–617
models. *See* color models; names of specific color models (RGB, CMYK, etc.)
named colors, 604–605
printed samples of, 629–630
printing. *See* printing
process colors. *See* process colors
profiles. *See* color profiles
proofs and proofing, 629–630, 638–640, 662
separations. *See* color separations
sets of, 623–624
spot colors. *See* spot colors
swatch libraries, 610
Swatches panel, 11, 607–611
synchronizing in book files, 551–552
tints, 392–393, 606, 611, 612, 619, 660
transparency. *See* transparency
trapping. *See* trapping
unnamed colors, 604–606, 609, 619
visual perception, 604
color bars, 621, 656, 671
Color Burn blending mode, 376
color composites, 657–658. *See also* color management
Color Conversion pop-up menu, 642
Color Dodge blending mode, 376
color gamuts, 604, 611, 621, 635–636
Color Handling pop-up menu, 640–641
Color Label command, 81
color management. *See also* color profiles
additional resources for, 628
advanced settings, 635–636
bitmapped images and, 479–480
black inks, 58–59, 639–640
black point compensation setting, 636

compressed dynamic range, 639–640
determining need for, 628–629
document profiles, 636–637
engines, 635
EPS graphics and, 513, 644
gamuts, 604, 611, 621, 635–636
gnawing off legs and, 631
imported images and, 637–638
in-RIP trapping, 659
matching ink on screen, 58–59, 639–640
monitor guidelines, 629
optimizing environment for viewing, 629
out-of-gamut colors, 611, 621, 635–636
overview, 627–628, 630
paper color, matching, 639–640
PDF, PDF/X... files, 483, 516, 523, 642–644
policies, 633–634
presets, 630–632
printed color samples, 629–630
printing, 640–644
proofing, 629–630, 638–640
rendering intents, 635–636
saving custom settings, 632
soft-proofing, 638–640
SWF files and, 744
synchronizing CS Suite, 630
transparency blending modes and, 375–377, 680
working spaces, 632–633, 636–637
Color Management pane (Print dialog box), 640–644
Color Management Policies settings, 633–634
color models
Adobe RGB, 631, 632
choosing, 605–606
CMYK. *See* CMYK color model
conversion errors, 606
LAB, 605, 621
RGB. *See* RGB color model
Color panel, 11, 366–367, 606, 620–621
Color Picker, 621–622
Color pop-up menu, 224, 657
color printers, 630
color profiles
applying to images, 637–638
changing, 636–637
CMYK profiles, 632–633
color management policies, 633–634
converting to new profiles, 636–637
default profiles, 632
device profiles, 627–628, 632
embedded profiles, 512, 637–638
exporting PDF files, 524, 642–644
ICC profiles, 524, 525
output profiles, 524, 640–642
RGB profiles, 632–633
soft-proofing, 638–640
source and target profiles, 640–642
transparency and, 680
working spaces, 632–633, 636–637
color separations. *See also* color management
previewing, 675–677
printing, 657–661
Color setting (grids), 47
Color Settings dialog box, 630–632
color spaces, 28, 512, 642
color spectrum, 604
color swatches. *See* swatches
Color transparency blending mode, 377
ColorSync management system, 628
column guides
adjusting layouts and, 105
changing, 78, 121–122, 123
defined, 119
manual text flow and, 166
preferences, 48–49
columns in grids, 596–597
columns in tables
adding, 407–409
alternating fills or strokes, 421–422
defined, 395
deleting, 409, 410
distributing evenly, 405
resizing, 406–407
selecting, 399–400
table styles and, 426
width of, 399
columns on pages
alternate layouts, 110–114
balancing automatically, 151
column breaks, 43, 304–306
column guides, 48–49, 78, 105, 119, 121–122, 123, 166
creating in text frames, 150–151
eBook export options, 753
flexible columns, 110, 151
gutter width, 122, 123
headlines for multiple columns, 157–159
hyphenation and, 301
importing Word/RTF files, 198
layout adjustment settings, 103–105
leading and, 257
liquid page rules, 106–110
master spread settings, 94
New Document dialog box, 70, 71
optical margin alignment, 333–334
page layout options, 78
page rules, 106–110
splitting, 157–159
width of, 121–122, 123, 150–151
combining panels, 13
combo boxes (forms), 725, 727
comma-delimited (.csv) files, 533, 534
comments, 210, 236
commercial printers. *See* imagesetters and service providers
Compatibility pop-up menu, 517
complex path operations, 350–354
complex stroke patterns, 359–360
Compose Using options, 50
Composite CMYK option, 657–658
composite color, printing, 657–658
Composite Leave Unchanged option, 658
composite paths. *See* compound paths
Composite RGB option, 657–658
Composite RGB profile, 641
composition
highlighting composition issues, 42–44, 304
multi-line composition, 297–299
Paragraph Composer, 298, 303
preferences, 42–45, 304
Single Line Composer, 298
Composition Preferences dialog box, 42–45, 304

C

compound paths (composite paths). *See also* outlines
converting text to paths, 432–434
converting to simple paths, 434
creating, 347
editing, 348
joining open paths, 347
path operations, 350–354
selecting portions of, 20
splitting, 348
compressed dynamic color range, 639–640
compressed PPDs, 647
compression
exporting PDF files, 520–522
file formats and, 474
interactive document settings, 743
resampling images, 521–522
in SWF files, 744
videos in folios, 764
Compression pop-up menu, 743
compromise, transparency and, 679
Compugraphic E-scales, 46
Compugraphics, 249
computers
capacity to build indexes (in your dreams, maybe), 561
as objects to be thrown out of windows, 449
Concepción, Anne-Marie, 447, 760
concordances, 561
condensed typefaces, 262
condition sets, 224
conditional images, 727
conditional text, 223–225
Conditional Text panel, 223–225
confidence, scripts and, 695
Configure Plug-Ins dialog box (Extension Manager), 67
conflicting text variables, 180–181
connect-the-dots puzzles, 335, 338
consecutive hyphens, 300
consecutive imposition, 672–673
Constrain Proportions options, 653
contact sheets, 472
container selections, 120
content. *See* text
Content Collector tool, 17, 18, 21, 332, 495
Content Conveyor tool
copying and placing objects, 21, 493–498
mapping styles, 332, 496, 497–498
placing linked objects, 493–494
Content Grabber tool, 19, 39, 115, 116, 498–499, 500–501, 589
Content Placer tool, 17, 18, 21, 332, 485, 495–496
content selections, 120
Content Viewer, 740, 762, 764
context menus, 29, 478
contextual ligatures, 272
Continue from Previous Document option, 553
Continue on Next Even Page option, 553
Continue on Next Odd Page option, 553
continuing numbers, 309
contouring text wrap, 430–431
control handles (direction lines), 336
converting points, 340, 342
corner and curve points, 339–340
deleting, 343
manipulating and retracting, 343
overview, 339–340
tips for working with, 343
Control panel, 3
applying formatting with, 251, 277
customizing options on, 34
docking problems, 14–15
moving objects with, 584
Proxy, 576, 577, 580, 581
rotating objects with, 590
scaling objects with, 587
shortcuts, 11
table controls in, 402
transforming methods, 576–583
Controlled by Master page rule, 107
Convert All Strokes to Outlines option, 683
Convert All Text to Outlines option, 683
Convert Clipping Path to Frame command, 510
Convert from Button command, 719
Convert Object to a Button command, 719
Convert Point operations, 354
Convert Point tool, 18, 21, 340, 342
Convert Quotes option (Use Typographer's Quotes option), 39–40, 197, 201
Convert Shape operations, 353–354
Convert Table to Text dialog box, 398, 399
Convert Tables To option, 197
Convert Text to Table dialog box, 396, 398
Convert to Beveled-Corner Rectangle button, 353
Convert to Column Breaks option, 198
Convert to Destination (Preserve Numbers) option, 523, 642
Convert to Destination options (PDF export), 523
Convert to Ellipse button, 354
Convert to Header/Footer Rows commands, 403–404
Convert to Inverse-Rounded-Corner Rectangle button, 354
Convert to Line button, 354
Convert to Note command, 212
Convert to Polygon button, 354
Convert to Profile dialog box, 636–637
Convert to Rectangle operation, 353
Convert to Rounded-Corner Rectangle button, 353
Convert to Text command, 212
Convert to Triangle button, 354
Convert to Vertical or Horizontal Line button, 354
Convert URLs to Hyperlinks dialog box, 713
Convert Variable to Text command, 183
converting
audio formats, 729
bullets or numbers to HTML text, 758
clipping paths to frames, 510
color management working spaces, 523, 633–634
colors to different models, 606
colors to new profiles, 636–637

compound paths to simple paths, 434
corners to rounded edges, 354–355
EPUB files to other formats, 745
EPUB to MOBI, 755
frames to text frames, 39–40, 148
images in eBooks, 754
multi-state objects to independent elements, 729
notes to text, 212
objects to buttons, 719
objects to groups for HTML, 756
older booked documents, 548
older InDesign files, 74
optimizing graphics for HTML, 759
page breaks to column breaks, 198
PageMaker files, 74, 75
paths to motion paths, 736
point operations, 354
points, 18, 21, 340, 342
QuarkXPress files, 74–75
quotation marks to typographer's quotes, 39–40, 197, 201
shapes to text frames, 148
spot and process colors, 617, 625–626
strokes to outlines, 683
table rows to headers or footers, 403–404
tables in Word files, 197
tables to text, 398, 399
text to notes, 212
text to outlines, 432–434, 683
text to tables, 396, 398
text variable instances to text, 182, 183
URLs to hyperlinks, 713
video formats, 729
Conveyor. *See* Content Conveyor tool
coordinates in Transform and Control panels, 38, 580–581
Copies field, 649
Copy Fonts option, 690
Copy Full Path command, 491
Copy Images pop-up menu, 758
"copy" in style names, 202
Copy Link(s) To command, 491
Copy PDF to Clipboard/Preserve PDF Data At Quit option, 61
Copy Platform Style Path option, 491, 534
Copy Text Styles to New Styles Group option, 332
copyfitting text in multiple windows, 8
copying
Content Collector options, 495
Content Conveyor options, 19, 495–497
dragging and dropping text, 205–206
duplicating and transforming, 581, 582
duplicating with Step and Repeat, 585
effects, 388
file paths, 491
formatting with Eyedropper, 24, 25
importing graphic files, 468
layers between publications, 140
linked files, 491
linked text frames, 163–164, 165
linking copied objects, 493–498
master spreads, 95, 97
metadata from files, 504
objects, 349
objects into states, 729
objects to other layers, 138, 139
pages and page spreads, 83
pathnames, 534
PDF files, permissions and, 528
PDF formats on Clipboard, 61
ruler guides, 128
stroke styles, 365, 366
styles between publications, 331–332
styles to alternate layouts, 332
styles to style groups, 113, 330
swatches, 620
tables from other programs, 397
text into HTML editors, 760
text variables, 180–181
Copyright metadata, 464
CorelDraw files, 489
Corner Options dialog box, 22, 355
corner points
control handles. *See* control handles
converting to curve points, 340, 342
corner options and, 355, 356
creating, 339
drawing, 340–342
point conversion operations, 354
stroke join options, 358
CornerEffects script, 698
corners
adjustments on strokes, 363
corner effects, 22, 354–355, 356
dotted or dashed line corners, 361–362
feather corner options, 384–387
join options, 358
miter limit, 358–359
Corners pop-up, 360
corrupt data, removing from files, 532
corrupted files, 77
Cover Page options, 750
cover pages, eBooks, 750, 753
covers, 87, 650
crash recovery, 77
Create Acrobat Layers option, 519, 554, 742
Create Alternate Layout dialog box, 112–113
Create Guides dialog box, 124
Create JDF File Using Acrobat option, 526
Create Links When Placing Text and Spreadsheet Files option, 60, 203, 492
Create Merged Document command and dialog box, 536, 537, 538
Create New Hyperlink button, 715
Create Outlines command, 433
Create Package Folder dialog box, 690–691
Create PDF Bookmarks checkbox, 718
Create Tagged PDF option, 518–519, 742
CreateCharacterStyle script, 318, 698
Creation Date metadata, 464
Creation Date variable, 175, 178
Creative Suite, 503
creativity, scripting and, 693, 700–701
Creep option, 673
Creo Scitext RIPs, 680
crimes, glyph scaling and, 303

C

Crop Amount option, 502
crop marks, 655, 670, 674, 699
Crop Marks option, 655
Crop Pages dialog box (Acrobat), 482
Crop To setting, 482
CropMarks script, 699
cropping. *See also* clipping paths; crop marks
  eBook export options, 754
  exporting PDF files and, 523
  HTML export options, 759
  importing PDF graphics and, 482
  movie frames, 733
  Page tool and, 20
  during placing, 502
  printing crop marks, 655
  retaining after relinking, 492
cross-platform scripting, 695
Cross Reference Formats dialog box, 193, 194
cross references
  to document sections, 191
  DPS issues, 763
  HTML export, 757
  in indexes, 566–568
  text variables and, 176
cross-rendering CMYK images, 642
crotchety graphics formats, 473
"Cruddy Preview" option, 481
CSS files (Cascading Style Sheet)
  applying no CSS tags, 759
  defined, 749
  embedding in HTML, 759
  external CSS files, 759
  including with eBooks, 755
  mapping styles, 748
  tags in HTML files, 759
CSS Options (eBooks), 754
CSV files, 533, 534
Cthulhu (elder space god), 308, 388
cubits, 45
curled page effect, 743
curly quotes, 39–40, 197, 200, 201
current animated object appearance, 734
Current Page option, 563
Cursor Key field, 46, 585
cursors and cursor icons
  1980s Block cursor, 55
  behavior in story windows, 54–55
  blinking cursors, madness and, 209
  Block cursor, 208–209
  drag and drop icons, 205–206
  dragging place icons, 470–471
  graphic place icons, 68
  highlighting objects under, 38
  link icons, 162
  moving cursor through text, 204–205
  multiple-file place icons, 68
  place icons, 68, 470–471
  preview images for, 37
  shadow cursors, 6
  smart cursors, 38, 128, 129
  Story Editor display, 208–209
  table editing cursors, 401
  text flow icons, 68, 166
  text insertion point, 160
  tools and, 18
  unlink icons, 162
curve points, 339, 340–342. *See also* control handles
curves of line segments, 343, 344, 354
custom baseline grids, 287
Custom Cross-Reference setting, 566
Custom Measurement Unit dialog box, 6
Custom Rasterization option, 750–751
Custom soft-proofing setting, 638
Custom Style Mapping dialog box, 497–498
Custom Text variable, 175, 178, 184–185
Custom Tracking/Kerning option, 44
Customize Control Panel dialog box, 34
Customize Style Import option, 199
customizing
  animation, 736
  baseline grids, 287
  color management settings, 632
  Control panel options, 34
  cross-references, 566
  measurement units, 6
  menus, 32–33
  objects or text. *See* editing
  printer's marks, 655–657, 670–671
  style imports, 199
  text variables, 177, 180
  time and date stamps, 184
  tracking and kerning, 44
CutContents script, 704–706
cute woolly animals that spit, 566
cutting
  CutContents script, 704–706
  points and paths in two, 26

D

damaged files, 77
Darken transparency mode, 376
Dashboard, 409n
dashed blue lines, 108
dashed strokes, 359, 360–362, 363
dashes, 170. *See also* hyphenation
data
  collecting in forms, 722, 724–726
  data fields, 534, 540
  merging. *See* data merge
data files
  importing, 200–201
  merging into InDesign, 533–540
  setup, 533–534
  updating merged data, 540
Data Format setting, 514, 666
data merge
  blank lines in data file, 539
  data file setup, 533–534
  importing images with text, 534
  importing indexing with text, 569
  limiting number of records, 539
  master pages and, 536
  multiple records on pages, 537, 539
  overview, 533–540
  template setup, 534–536
  updating merged data, 540
Data Merge panel, 533–540
Datacolor Spyder, 629
DataLinker, 533
dates
  creation dates, 175, 464
  eBook publish dates, 753
  formatting text, 178
  metadata, 464, 753
  modification dates, 175, 178
  output dates, 176, 178, 184

printing on output, 184
in text variables, 175–176, 178, 184
time and date stamps, 175, 184
days in text variables, 179
DCS files and workflows, 56, 474, 475, 680
DDE/COM, 697
deadly Word features, 199
debugging scripts, 696–697
Decimal Places option, 201
decimal tabs and tab stops, 283
declarations, 754, 759
Default Fill/Stroke icon, 18
Default View Settings options, 55
defaults
application defaults, 62
Auto leading setting, 255
bullet characters, 308–309
character styles, 320
color management, 630–632
document defaults, 62
fills and strokes, 18
flattener presets, 684
keyboard shortcuts, 2, 30
link options, 494
new documents and, 73
numeral formatting, 275
object styles, 451
paragraph styles, 325
radio and check boxes, 727
reverting to original defaults, 62
setting, 62
text variables, 176
view settings, 55
Define Document Presets dialog box, 72
Define Print Presets dialog box, 668–670
defining
keyboard shortcuts, 29–32
presets, 72–73, 668–670
stroke styles, 363–365
text variables, 181
Delete All Guides command, 128
Delete End Punctuation option, 178
Delete Layer button/command, 135, 140
Delete Master Spread command, 100
Delete Note button, 212
Delete Point tool, 18, 21
Delete Style button, 453
Delete Swatches dialog box, 619
Delete Text Variables dialog box, 182
Delete Type on a Path command, 460
Delete Unused Layers command, 140
Deleted Text option, 53
deleting. *See also* removing
alternate layouts, 114
anchored objects, 441
blank lines in data, 539
bullets or numbers, 314
character styles, 321
clipping paths, 510
colors, 618–619
conditions from text, 224
Content Conveyor objects, 495
control handles, 343
corner effects, 355
corrupt data from files, 532
documents from books, 547–548
effects, 388
empty pages, 113
fill or stroke colors, 366–367
frame-fitting options, 502
hyperlinks, 716
index entries, 569
inline frames, 441
items from Quick Apply list, 462
items in frames, 704–706
keyboard shortcuts, 30
layers, 135, 140
line breaks, 494
line segments, 22
linked objects, 494
linked text frames, 163
master spreads, 100
notes in stories, 212
object styles, 453
objects, 144, 704–706
optical margin adjustments, 334
pages, 79
paragraph styles, 327
PDF export presets, 529
points from paths, 18, 22, 344
preference settings, 62
print presets, 670
punctuation in text variables, 178
ruler guides, 128
scripts accidentally, 701
shapes after path operations, 351
stroke styles, 365
swatches, 619
tab stops, 284
table columns or rows, 409, 410
tables, 409
text from paths, 460
text variables, 182
text with specified styles, 236
tracking changes to text, 53
unplaced graphics from cursor, 471
unused layers, 140
unwanted color swatches, 532
words from dictionaries, 216–217
delimiters, 396, 398, 534
Delphi, 697
denominator characters, 274
descenders, 267, 458, 460
Description metadata, 464
Description panel (File Info dialog box), 504
descriptions
buttons, 726
files, 504
forms, 726
metadata, 464
deselecting objects, 116–117
A Designer's Guide to Adobe InDesign and XML, 544
destinations (buttons), 720
destinations (cross references), 191
destinations (hyperlinks), 713–715, 714, 720
Detach All Objects from Master command, 103
Detach Selection from Master command, 103
detecting edges for clipping paths, 509
device-independent PostScript, 647
device profiles (monitors, printers)
applying to images, 637–638
CMYK profiles, 632–633
color management policies, 633–634
default profiles, 632
defined, 627–628
embedded profiles, 637–638
RGB profiles, 632–633
soft-proofing, 638–640
devices (mobile, reading, tablet)
checking graphics on, 751

D

Digital Publishing Suite, 760–766
downloading folios to, 762
eBook reflow on, 745
eReader-friendly PDFs, 530–531
library cover pages, 750
renditions for, 764–765
targeting layouts for, 110, 112
troubleshooting, 765
dfont packages, 691
diagonal lines
in cell styles, 424
in tables, 419–420
dialog boxes, 16, 708, 747. *See also* names of specific dialog boxes
dictionaries. *See also* checking spelling
adding words to, 215–216, 217
dictionary-style headers, 186, 189
importing text-only files, 200
language and character formatting, 263–264
merging into documents, 51
preferences, 49–51
Dictionary Preferences dialog box, 49–51
dictionary-style headers, 186, 189
didots, 16
Diffused feather corner option, 385
Digital Editions, 752–753
Digital Publishing Intent files, 112
Digital Publishing Suite
Adobe Edge files, 765
Adobe IDs, 761
alternate layouts and, 112
animation, 733, 765
audio and video in, 729–733
DPS Desktop Tools, 761
example viewer apps, 766
folio renditions, 764–765
folios and articles, 762
HTML code in, 765
HTML export options, 756
interactive overlays, 740
interactivity, 710, 711, 740, 763–764
metadata properties, 762–763
overview, 760
previewing content, 740, 764
resources, 765–766
source documents, 690, 761, 762
subscriptions, 760
updating DPS Desktop Tools, 761
Digital Rights Management, 527–528
digital signatures, 725
digits. *See* numbers
dimensions
folio images, 764
folio renditions, 765
page coordinates, 582
resizing to guides, 50
Dimensions Include Stroke Weight option, 582
Direct Selection tool, 18, 20, 116, 118–119, 142, 250, 499
direct to plate printing, 629
direction
drawn paths, 338
motion paths, 736
direction lines. *See* control handles (direction lines)
Directional Feather effect, 385–386, 387
directories. *See* folders
disabilities and accessibility, 518–519, 530–531, 748
disaster recovery, 77
discretionary hyphen characters, 301
discretionary ligatures, 271
Discretionary Line Breaks option, 752
disdain for page curls, 743
Display All Blacks... options, 59
Display Item Information button, 28
Display Performance Preferences dialog box, 55–58
display type, 257
displaying
animated objects, 735
baseline grid, 121
black inks, 58–59
changed text, 53
conditional text, 224
Content Conveyor, 495, 496
controls for interactive features, 731–732
fields, 720
glyphs and characters, 172
guides and grids, 47–49, 121, 139
hidden characters, 176, 205
hidden menu items, 33
hidden panels, 38
hidden tools, 18
hyperlinks, 716
import options, 195, 196
interactive documents full-screen, 742
kerning amounts, 260
keyboard shortcut list, 30, 32
layers, 135–136, 138
library item information, 28
links between text frames, 148, 160, 161
metadata, 187–190
multiple windows, 7–9
nested object's offset, 583
notes, 213
page views, 4–5
panels as icons, 38
prefixes or suffixes, 220
problem tags, 202
rotating page view, 89–90
Story Editor preferences, 54–55
subsets of libraries, 28
tag markers, 541, 542
tagged frames, 541
text snippets, 541
text threads, 148, 160–161
text variables, 176
thumbnails, 37, 80
Tool Tips, 37
transparency on screen, 57
displays. *See* screen display
dissolves, 739
distances, measuring, 24, 25
distortions
objects. *See* transformations
printing process, 653
Distribute Columns Evenly command, 405
Distribute Rows Evenly command, 405
distributing objects
Liquid HTML5 pagination options, 114
Live Distribute feature, 599
overview, 598–601
table rows or columns, 405
 tags, 759
"do script" method, 695
docked publication display, 39
Document Bleed settings, 512
Document Chapter Numbering options, 553–554
Document CMYK setting, 638

document defaults, 62
Document dictionary preferences settings, 50
Document Fonts folder, 691
document grid, 47–48, 121, 130–131
Document Grid preferences settings, 47–48
Document Open Password setting, 527
document pages
  alternate layouts, 110–114
  applying master edits, 103–105
  applying master spreads, 83, 84, 97–99
  creating master pages from, 95
  HTML5 pagination options, 114
  liquid page rules, 106–110
  optional, in alternate layouts, 114
  overriding master items, 100, 102–103
document presets, 72–73
Document Recovery Data preferences, 59–60
Document RGB setting, 744
Document Setup dialog box, 78, 84
Document source spaces, 640
document spaces (color), 636–637
documents. *See* publications
dodecagons, drawing, 22
donut shapes, 347
dorkiness of hyperlink appearance options, 715
DOS look, achieving, 208–209
dot-doubling, 615
dot leaders, 285–286, 557
dots per inch (dpi), 476
dotted strokes, 360–365
double quotes ("), 39–40, 50, 197
double-sided printing, 675
double spaces, cleaning up, 243
doughnut shapes, 347
downloadable fonts, printing, 664–665
downloading
  articles or folios to devices, 761, 762
  color sets, 623–624
  fonts, 664–665
  renditions for devices, 765
  subsets of glyphs in fonts, 36
downsampling images, 476, 521–522
dpi (dots per inch), 476
DPS Desktop Tools, 761
DPS files. *See* Digital Publishing Suite
drag and drop features
  applying fills, 366
  applying master pages, 97
  copying text, 205–206
  greeking graphics during, 39
  Grid Mode and, 596–597
  image redraw settings, 39
  importing graphic files, 468
  importing multiple files, 471
  importing text files, 148
  magnifying area of screen, 64, 65
  moving objects, 584
  moving text, 205–206
  placing items, 470–471
  resizing tables, 404–406
  scrolling, 66
  snippets on desktop, 532
  sorting list/combo box options, 727
  text editing, 41, 205–206
draw-downs, 614
drawing. *See also* lines and line segments; paths (drawn); names of specific shapes
  basic shapes, 336–337
  Bezier paths, 337
  drawing tools, 17, 18, 336
  drop shadows, 380–383
  feathering, 384–387
  fills. *See* fills
  frames, 335, 336
  gradients. *See* gradients and gradient fills
  motion paths, 736
  NINAs, 706–707
  paths, 21, 335, 340–349
  with Pen tool, 21, 340–342
  with Pencil tool, 21–22, 340, 341
  strokes. *See* strokes
  tips, 342–343
  transparency. *See* transparency
drawing or redrawing screen display, 55
drawing tools, 17, 18, 336
drawings
  bitmap graphics. *See* bitmap graphics
  choosing file formats, 473–475
  PostScript paths. *See* paths (drawn)
  vector graphics. *See* vector graphics
dreaded pink highlights, 242, 253, 304
dreaded red plus sign (+), 156
dreams of organizational goodness, 704
Dreamweaver, 755, 757, 759
driving cars, scripting and, 694
DRM (Digital Rights Management), 527–528
drop caps, 289–290, 296, 316, 447
Drop Caps and Nested Styles dialog box, 291
drop-down lists (forms), 725
drop shadows
  creating, 380–383
  display options, 477
  movie frames and, 733
  transparency and, 380–381, 679
DTPtools PageControl plug-in, 673
dull as rocks numbering, 309
dummy second-level entries, 567
dummy text, 173–175, 559
duotones, 660
Duplicate Master Spread command, 95
Duplicate Spread command, 83
duplicated names of fonts, 253
duplicating. *See also* copying
  animation, 736
  grids of objects, 596–597
  master spreads, 95
  multiple merged records, 537, 539
  objects, 349, 585
  objects in states, 729
  objects while transforming, 581, 582
  pages and page spreads, 83
  ruler guides, 128
  swatches, 620
duration of animated objects, 738
dynamic ranges of color, 639–640
Dynamic Spelling option, 51, 216–217, 218

E

early days of page layout, 17
Ease In option, 734

eBooks. *See* EPUB files and eBooks
ECMA JavaScript standard, 695
edges, feathering, 384–387
Edit All Export Tags dialog box, 531, 749, 756
Edit Color Swatch dialog box, 618
Edit Custom Style Mapping icon, 497
Edit Glyph Set dialog box, 173
Edit Gradient Swatch dialog box, 618
Edit Header/Footer commands, 404
Edit Original feature, 489
Edit Stroke Style dialog box, 365
Edit Text Variable dialog box, 180
Edit Tint Swatch dialog box, 618
Edit With feature, 489
editable objects, copying, 61
editing
  alternate layouts, 114
  color sets, 624
  colors, 618
  compound paths, 348
  Control panel options, 34
  declarations, 754, 759
  documents in Book panel, 548–549
  eBook metadata, 753
  effects, 388
  embedded graphics, 490
  Flash files, 745
  folio properties, 762
  glyph sets, 173
  gradients, 371–372, 618
  headers or footers, 404
  HTML code, 765
  hyperlink sources or destinations, 713–715, 716
  images in PDF files, 523
  layer properties, 138–140
  master spreads, 99–100
  menus, 32–33
  metadata, 190
  mixed ink groups, 617
  motion paths, 736
  multi-state objects, 729
  notes, 212
  object styles, 453
  original graphic files, 489
  page size, 79
  parent linked objects, 493–494
  PDF export presets, 530
  print presets, 670
  Quick Apply list items, 462
  ruler guides, 124–125
  scripts, 695–697
  shortcuts, 29–32
  slide shows, 729
  stroke styles, 365
  strokes, 362
  style mappings, 531
  style tags for HTML export, 756
  table or cell styles, 426–427
  text. *See* editing text
  text variables, 180, 183
  text wrap boundary, 431, 432
  tints, 618
  tracking changes, 209–210, 211
editing text. *See also* editing
  character styles, 320
  checking spelling, 213–218
  cursor movement shortcuts, 204–205
  deleting styled paragraphs, 236
  drag and drop editing, 41, 205–206
  finding/changing formatting, 232–234
  finding/changing text, 226–244
  glyph sets, 173
  headers and footers in tables, 404
  index entries, 569–570
  index page references, 570
  moving text, 205–206
  paragraph styles, 324–325
  Story Editor, 206–209
  tab stops, 284
  table items, 401
  tracking changes, 209–210, 211
EditWriters, 249
Effect path text options, 457–459
effects. *See also* animation
  beveling, 383, 384
  blurry text, 387–388
  copying to other objects, 388
  editing, 388
  Effects panel, 11, 374, 375, 377, 379
  embossing, 383, 384
  feathering, 384–387
  glows, 383
  removing, 388
  text on a path options, 457–459
Effects dialog box, 379, 380
Effects panel, 11, 374, 375, 377, 379
elder evil space gods (Cthulhu, etc.), 308, 388
elements
  eBook articles, 747
  XML, 541, 542. *See also* XML and structured documents
Ellipse Frame tool, 17, 18
ellipses and Ellipse tool, 17, 18, 22, 336–337, 354
em, defined, 257
Em Software, 533
 tags, 760
email
  addresses, 240, 714
  collecting form data, 722
embarrassment of hot pink dingbats, 325
Embed Fonts setting (EPS export), 514
Embed Page Thumbnails option, 518, 741
embedded audio in PDF files, 732–733
embedded color profiles, 512, 633–634, 637–638, 643
Embedded CSS option, 759
embedded fonts, 514, 516, 525–526, 755
embedded graphics
  color profiles, 637–638
  displaying on Links panel, 485
  editing originals, 490
  embedding/unembedding, 489–490
  in lines of text. *See* inline frames
  overview, 484
  page thumbnails, 518
  size of publications and, 489–490
embedded movies in PDF files, 710
embedded OPI links, 480–481
embedded Preflight profiles, 689
embedded text files, 203
Emboss effect, 383, 384
embossing images, 383, 384
empowerment, 708
empty declarations, 754, 759
empty frames, fitting graphics into, 503
empty pages, deleting, 113
Emulate Adobe InDesign 2.0 CMS Off preset, 631
emulsion, print settings for, 659
Enable Anti-Aliasing option, 57

Enable Color Management option, 479–480
Enable Dynamic Spelling option, 51, 217
Enable Floating Document Window Docking option, 39
Enable Layout Adjustment option, 89, 103–104
Enable Multi-Touch Gestures option, 38, 67
Enable Track Changes in Current Story option, 210
encoding
  PDF files, 522
  XML files, 543
encryption for PDF files, 527–528
End Indicator (text on paths), 454–455
End Nested Style Character option, 292
endnotes, 197, 223
ends of stories, searching to, 228
Engine pop-up menu, 635
entering text
  creating text frames, 148–149
  dummy text, 173–175
  glyphs, 171–173
  importing text or files, 194–201
  non-Latin faces and, 42
  special characters, 169–173
  Type tool, 17, 18, 21
entries. *See* indexes and index entries
Entry Separators options, 573–574
envelopes, 87
environment for color management, 629
EPS graphics
  choosing file formats, 473, 475
  color management, 628, 640, 644
  display performance settings, 56
  editing original, 489
  exporting, 513–515
  importing, 480–481, 667
  listing fonts in, 275–276
  metafiles, 472–473
  OPI and, 667
  strengths and weaknesses of, 473
  transparency and, 374, 679
EPS Import Options dialog box, 480–481, 667
EPUB 3.0 with Layout option, 753
EPUB Export Options dialog box, 752–755
EPUB files and eBooks
  animation, 733
  Articles panel, 746–747
  classes, 749
  cover and title pages, 750
  creating, 710, 745, 753–755
  embedded fonts, 755
  EPUB 2.0.1 format, 753
  EPUB 3.0 format, 114, 733, 753, 755
  exporting, 554, 745, 747, 753–755
  HTML5 pagination options, 114
  IDPF Web site info, 745
  interactive features in, 711
  layout options, 753
  mapping styles for export, 748
  order of items in, 746–747
  page item tips, 749–753
  pagination, 114
  previewing, 753
  resources for, 755
  scripting in, 755
  tags in PDF files, 518–519, 544
EPUB Secrets Web site, 755
equal-width columns, 121–122
equilateral polygons, 22
eras, text variables for, 179
Eraser tool, 18, 22, 350, 351
erasing paths, 350, 351
eReaders, 110, 112, 750, 751. *See also* devices (mobile, reading, tablet)
errors
  Preflight warnings, 687–688
  previewing before placing files, 202
escaping characters, 239
Escher, M. C., 706
espresso machines, end of civilization and, 334
ESTK (ExtendScript Toolkit), 695
Europe ISO Fogra27 setting, 633
Europe Prepress 2 setting, 631
even and odd pages, 553, 650–651
even-odd fills, 348–349
Even Pages Only option, 650–651
evenly-spaced columns, 121–122
evenly-spaced objects, 20, 598–601
events, 719, 720, 734, 737
evil space gods (Cthulhu, etc.), 308, 388
examples of scripts. *See* scripting examples
Excel files, 194, 200–201, 397
exclamation mark (!), 485
Exclude Overlap path operation, 353
Expand All Footnotes command, 208
Expand/Collapse Notes, 212
expanded typefaces, faking, 262
expanding
  footnotes, 208
  layer display, 135–136
  notes, 212
  panels, 10, 14
  text frames automatically, 156–157
Expert versions of fonts, 265
Export Adobe Flash CS6 Professional (FLA) dialog box, 745
Export Adobe PDF dialog box
  color management and, 642–644
  Compression pane, 520–523
  General pane, 516–520
  Ink Manager, 524, 525, 625
  overview, 516
  Security pane, 527–528
Export dialog box, 203
Export EPS dialog box, 513–515, 625
export filters, 203, 246
Export JPEG dialog box, 511–512
Export SWF dialog box, 743–744
Export Tagging options, 748, 756
Export XML dialog box, 543
ExportAllStories script, 699
exporting
  accessible tagged files, 530–531
  Adobe Edge files, 756, 765
  animation for PDF files, 738
  Background Tasks info, 27
  booklets, 675
  books, 546, 554, 675
  color management profiles and, 640
  documents with hyperlinks, 717
  eBook covers and title pages, 750
  eBook footnotes, 750
  eBook metadata, 754
  EPS graphics, 513–515

E

EPUB files, 554, 745, 750, 753–755
export options, saving, 528–530
Flash files, 745
HTML, 755–760
InDesign IDML files, 532
InDesign Markup Format files, 76
interactive PDF files, 710–711, 738, 741–743, 745
interactive SWF files, 743–744
JPEG files, 511–512
mapping styles in tagged PDFs, 531
metadata, 504, 754
motion presets, 738
objects as snippets, 532–533
overview, 511
PDF export presets, 528–530
PDF files, 516–520, 554, 675, 741–743
PDF forms, 724
PNG files, 511–512
PostScript files to disk, 647
print presets, 670
snippets, 756
stories from publications, 699
style groups and, 331
SWF files, 743–744
tagging options, 530–531, 544, 748, 756
text files, 203
Word files, 331
XML files or tags, 543–544
Exposé, 409n
ExtendScript Toolkit, 695
Extensible Markup Language. *See* XML and structured documents
Extension Manager, 67
extensions, file, 76, 178
External CSS option, 759
Extra Carriage Returns setting, 200
Extra Spaces setting, 200
"extract label" method, 703
extracting metadata from files, 504
Extras submenu (View menu), 39
extraterrestrial plots, 388
eye icon, 136
Eyedropper Options dialog box, 24, 25
Eyedropper tool, 18, 24, 25, 366, 369
EyeOne device, 629

F

F4V files, 729, 731, 732
facing pages, 70, 71, 84, 86
Facing Pages option, 70, 71, 84
Fade In animation, 734
fades (animated objects), 735
fake condensed or expanded type, 262
fake fractions, 271–272
fake italic type, 263, 264
fake Latin text, 173–175
Farrukh Imposition Publisher, 671
Fast Display setting, 477
fast hyperlinks, 712
Fast Saves option (Word), 199
fatigue, scripting and, 701
favorite shortcuts, 32
FDF data, 722
Feather Widths option, 386
feathering, 384–387, 477, 614
Fidelity slider, 350
fields
buttons as, 720
form data in PDFs, 722, 724–727
tab order, 722, 743
fiends, hardcore Find/Change shortcuts and, 231
figure elements, tagging, 530
figures
captions, 463–466
figure numbers, 176, 311, 313
lining figures, 274–275
numerals. *See* numbers
file control systems (workgroups), 550
file extensions, 76, 178
file formats. *See also* names of specific formats
compression and, 474
exporting text, 203
graphic file formats, 473–475
importing text, 194–195
sending files to printers, 686–687
File Handling dialog box, 59–61, 491–492
File Info dialog box, 504, 753
File Information dialog box, 754
file links. *See* linked graphics and text files
File Name variable, 175, 178
file paths, 491, 492
file size, folios, 764
files. *See also* publications
converting, 74–75, 484
creating links to, 60
exporting. *See* exporting
folios, 762, 764
hyperlinks to, 714
imagesetting, preparing for, 686–687
metadata in, 503–505
opening with button actions, 721
organizing in books, 548
packaging, 682, 690–691
preflight testing, 687–690
relinking to different files, 488–489
temporary, 59, 60
text variables in, 177
Fill Frame Proportionally option, 110, 500, 501, 539
Fill selector, 18, 26–27, 366, 607
Fill with Placeholder Text command, 173
fills
after path operations, 352
alternating, in tables, 421–422
applying, 366–367
applying effects to, 379
applying to text characters, 276, 277
cell styles, 424
copying with Eyedropper tool, 24, 25
currently selected swatch, 607
default fill color, 607
displaying information about, 28
EPUB and HTML export, 750
Fill selector, 26–27, 366, 607
finding/replacing in objects, 144–146
gradient fills. *See* gradients and gradient fills
paths with even-odd fills, 348–349
removing fills, 27, 366–367
swapping fill and stroke colors, 607

table options, 424
table styles, 426
filtering Quick Apply list, 463
filters
export filters, 203, 246
import filters, 195–202, 246
Final positional form, 273
find and replace. *See* finding and replacing
Find/Change dialog box, 11, 145–146, 226–244
Find Font dialog box, 275–276
Find Format Settings dialog box, 232
Find Missing Links Before Opening Document checkbox, 492
Find Missing Links Before Opening Document option, 60
Find Next button, 229
Find Object Format Options dialog box, 145
Find What field, 228
FindChange scripts, 699
finding
linked images on disk, 490, 491, 492
metadata in files, 504–505
missing links, 60, 487, 492
words, 228
finding and replacing
defining range of searches, 228
Find/Change dialog box, 11, 145–146, 226–244
finding next instances, 229
fonts, 275–276
formatting attributes, 232–234
index entries, 570
keyboard shortcuts, 231
metacharacters/wildcards, 229–230
methods, 226–227
object formatting, 144–146
options and settings, 227–228
overview, 226–227
saving queries, 244
text
deleting text by style, 236
FindChange scripts, 699
glyphs, 242–245
GREP methods, 236–242
index entries, 570
metacharacters/wildcards, 229–230
methods, 226–227
note text, 52
replacing text, 230–231
replacing with Clipboard, 234
Unicode text values, 235
Fire tablet, 760–766
Fireworks, 759
First Baseline Offset option, 221
First Baseline option, 437
first baselines, text, 155–156, 221, 437
First Line Left Indent field, 279
first line of paragraphs
aligning to baseline grid, 289
first line indentation, 279–281
"first name, last name" order, 238–239, 242
First on Page option, 178, 186
First Page button, 3, 5
fission, single-cell tables and, 411
Fit Content Proportionally command, 500, 501, 596
Fit Content to Frame command, 500, 501
Fit Frame to Content command, 500, 501, 502, 596, 730
Fit Page in Window view, 32, 63, 82
Fit Selection in Window command, 63–64
Fit Spread in Window view, 63
fitting
content in frames, 500, 501–503, 596
data merge content, 539
frames to content, 167–169
objects on screen, 32, 63–65
video content in frames, 730
Fitting pop-up menu, 539
Fixed Column Width option, 150
fixed leading, 155–156, 437
FLA. *See* Flash and FLA files
flagging. *See* highlighting
Flash and FLA files
animation, 733–734
controllers, 731
editing, 745
exporting, 710, 711, 745
hyperlinks to, 714
interactive features in, 710, 711
limitations, 733
text in, 745
using motion presets in, 734, 738
Flash Classic Text option, 744
Flash Professional, 738
Flash TLF Text option, 745
Flatten Transparency option, 745
flattened Photoshop files, 474–475
flattener. *See also* transparency
Acrobat Reader and, 517
exporting EPS graphics, 515
exporting PDF files, 526
flattener presets, 681–683
flattening methods, 678–679
previewing settings, 684–685
resolution setting, 681–683
settings, 373
tricks and guidelines, 679–680
flattener presets, 681–683
Flattener Preview panel (Flattener Alert panel), 684–685
Fleishman, Glenn, 476
flexible column width options, 151
Flexible Columns option, 110, 157
flexographic printing, 653
Flip buttons, 582
Flip commands, 591
Flip option, path text, 458, 459
Flip pop-up menu, 659
flipping
arrows, 360, 361
buttons for, 582
objects, 591
output options, 659
pages automatically, 742
text on paths, 455, 456, 458, 459
floating panels, 3, 38
floating windows (documents), 39
floating windows (video), 732
floppy disk icon, 332
flowing text, 160–162, 164–167. *See also* linked text frames
fluorescent inks, 614
fluxoid plasma leaks, 753
FLV files, 729, 731, 732. *See also* Flash and FLA files
fly-out tool menus, 18
focus, 9–10, 719
Fogra setting, 631, 633
Folder Number display, 486
Folder options (metadata), 464
folders
displaying paths in metadata, 464

F

HTML-exported images, 758, 759
paths in text variables, 178
relink folders, 492
searching for fonts, 691
Folio Builder panel, 761–2, 763
Folio Overlays panel, 710, 761, 763
Folio Preview option, 764
folio renditions, 764–765
Folio view, 763
folios
alternate layouts, 762
aspect ratios, 765
bloated size of, 764
creating, 762
interactivity, 763–764
multiple articles in, 762
previewing, 760, 764
renditions for, 764–765
source documents, 761, 762
transferring source files, 690
uploading to cloud, 762
Font Downloading settings, 664–665
font families and fonts
checking in Preflight, 687
Document Fonts folder, 691
downloadable fonts, 664–665
duplicated names, 253
embedded fonts, 514, 516, 525–526, 755
embedding in eBooks, 755
embedding in EPS files, 514
finding/changing, 232–234, 242–245
font preview size, 41
form fields, 726
glyphs. *See* glyphs; special characters
including with files, 690
kerning and, 258–359
letter and word spacing, 301–303
mixing and matching characters, 173
Multiple Master fonts, 40
non-Latin fonts, 42
OpenType fonts, 270–275
ornament characters, 173
outline fonts, 432
PDF, PDF/X... files, 516
positional forms, 273
printer fonts, 432
publication folder for, 691
resident fonts, 664
searching directories for, 691
selecting, 251–253
special characters. *See* special characters
stylistic sets, 273
subsetting, 36, 525–526
substitution, 43, 242, 253
symbol fonts, 253
version numbers, 275
Font Preview Size option, 41
font subsetting, 36, 525–526
font substitution, 43, 242, 253
footers. *See* headers or footers
Footnote Options dialog box, 219–223
footnotes
creating, 218–223
deleting, 219
endnotes, 223
EPUB export, 750
finding text in, 228
HTML export, 757
limitations of, in InDesign, 218
rules above, 222
split columns and, 158
Story Editor view, 208
in Word files, 197
Footnotes/Endnotes option, 197
For Next # of Pages option, 564
For Next # of Paragraphs option, 564
For Position Only images, 488
force justified paragraph alignment, 278
forced line breaks, 494, 752
foreground color. *See* transparency
formats. *See* file formats
formatting. *See also* mapping styles; styles
after path operations, 352
attributes. *See* formatting attributes
characters. *See* character formatting; formatting text
Clipboard contents and, 234
compared to styles, 315, 316
CSS files and, 749
eBook exports and, 754
Eyedropper tool and, 24, 25
finding/replacing, 144–146
mapping styles, 497–498
paragraphs. *See* formatting text; paragraph formatting
paths, 338
Quick Apply feature, 460–463
retaining when pasting, 61
reusing. *See* styles
tables. *See* formatting tables
text. *See* formatting text
Formatting Affects Container button, 18, 27
Formatting Affects Text button, 18, 27, 277
formatting attributes
deleting text with specified styles, 236
finding and changing, 232–234
typesetting tags. *See* tagged text and documents
formatting tables. *See also* tables
alternating fills or strokes, 421–422
applying, 413
borders of tables, 421
cell options, 413–414
diagonal lines, 419–420
fills, 416–419
gradients, 418–419
strokes, 413–416
formatting text. *See also* tagged text and documents
characters. *See* character formatting
in containers, 27, 277
cross references, 192, 193–194
CSS files and, 754, 759
dates, 178
deleting text with specified styles, 236
email addresses, 240
entire text frames, 251
finding/changing attributes, 232–234
global, 315
local, 315, 319, 321, 323, 324
matching in eBooks, 754
paragraphs. *See* paragraph formatting
pasted text, 194
preserving in HTML files, 760
preserving/removing during import, 197, 202
removed during eBook export, 746
selecting text, 250–251, 255, 256
styles. *See* styles
tab leaders, 285–286

tables. *See* formatting tables
text between tags, 239–240, 243
typesetting tags. *See* tagged text and documents
forms
clearing with buttons, 721
collecting and submitting data, 722
creating for PDF files, 724–726
exporting, 743
fields, 726, 727
interactive file support, 711, 743
multiple selection lists, 727
passwords, 726
radio and check box defaults, 727
sample objects for, 726
sorting list and combo boxes, 727
tab order, 722, 743
tooltips for, 726
values exported from forms, 727
Forms And Media option, 743
formulas in fields, 16
forums
Digital Publishing Suite, 766
InDesign scripting, 697
fountains. *See* gradients and gradient fills
FPO images, 488
fractions, 171, 271–272
Frame Content option, 494
frame drawing tools, 148, 149
Frame Fitting Options dialog box, 110, 501–502, 503
frames (layout)
alternate layouts and fitting, 111
applying effects to, 379
button rollovers and states, 722–723
centering contents in, 502–503
converting clipping paths to, 510
converting to buttons, 719
converting to text frames, 148
corner options, 354–355, 356
drawing, 335, 336
fitting features, 111, 500, 501–503
graphic place icons, 68
HTML export, 756
inline. *See* inline frames
liquid page rules, 109–110
for media files, 730
non-rectangular, 155
placing graphics in, 469
placing multiple files and, 471–472
removing objects from, 704–706
scaling and, 588
selecting frames or contents, 498–499
shrinking to fit contents, 167–169
tagging with XML tags, 541, 542
text. *See* text frames
text flow icons and, 68
transforming contents, 577–578, 580
XML element data and, 541, 542
frames (movies), 731
Fraser, Bruce, 476, 628
free DPS Tips app, 764
Free Transform tool, 17, 18, 24, 585, 587, 589
Freedman, Matt, 706
freeform paths, 21–22, 340–342
"freezing" text variables, 183
frequency, screen, 521, 659–661
Friedl, Jeffrey E. F., 241
friends, impressing, 23
"friends" who bump your arm, 349
From Structure option, 530
full-height numerals, 274–275
full-page images in eBooks, 751
full screen mode (Acrobat), 742
full spectrum lighting, 629
"furi kuri," 36
furlongs, 45
fuzzy graphics, 476
fx icon, 388
fx pop-up menu, 379, 380

G

gamuts, color, 604, 611, 621, 635–636
Gap Color/Gap Tint pop-ups, 360, 361
Gap setting, 652
Gap tool, 17, 18, 20, 599–601
gaps
between printed pages, 652
spacing objects, 599–601
in strokes, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363–365
gate folds, 87
General pane (HTML Export Options dialog box), 758–759
General pane (Print dialog box), 648–651
General Preferences dialog box, 36–37
General Purpose option (color management preset), 631
Generate Index button or dialog box, 570–574
Generate Overset Text Report with Document Creation option, 537
generating
data merge reports, 537
embedded SWF file codes, 743
indexes, 570–574
tables of contents, 559
generosity of PeachPit Press, 301
gestures, 38, 67
ghosts, battling, 157
GIF files, 56, 472, 478–480, 754, 759
Gill, Tim, 677, 678
global formatting, 315
Global Light option, 381
glow effect, 383, 699
Glyph Scaling option, 302–303
glyph sets, 173
glyphs. *See also* special characters
bullets, 307–309
entering in text frames, 171–173
finding and changing, 226, 242–245
glyph sets, 173
Glyphs panel, 11, 242–245
highlighting substituted glyphs, 44
OpenType fonts and, 271
scaling, 302–303
subsetting characters in fonts, 36
substitution, 242
Glyphs panel, 11, 171–173, 242–245
gnawing off legs, 631
Go Back/Go Forward commands, 67
Go to Bridge button, 4
Go to Destination action, 720
Go to Link button, 490
Go to Next Note/Go to Previous Note button, 212
Go to Next State action, 721
Go to Next View action, 721
Go to Note Anchor button, 212

Go to... Page action, 720
Go To Page command, 67
Go to Previous State action, 721
Go to Previous View action, 721
Go To Source command, 494
Go to State action, 721
Go to URL action, 720
Google Maps, 756, 765
Google Play, 760
Grabber hand, 18, 26, 39, 64, 65, 66
GRACoL setting, 633
Gradient and Mesh Resolution setting, 682–683
Gradient Feather effect, 386–387, 614
Gradient Feather tool, 18, 26
Gradient panel, 11, 368, 369, 371, 372, 606, 613
gradient ramps, 369
gradient stops, 369, 612
gradient swatches, 611–614
Gradient tool, 18, 26, 369
gradients and gradient fills
  applying
    basic techniques, 369, 622–623
    to characters, 276, 277
    to multiple paths, 372, 373
    to paths, 368–369
    to table cells, 418–419
    transparency to, 614
  center points, 368, 369
  changing gradient colors, 372
  creating, 369–371, 611–614
  editing, 371–372
  feathering effects, 26, 386–387, 614
  gradient controls, 369
  gradient swatches, 611–614
  linear gradients, 367–368
  radial gradients, 367–368
  tools, 18
  transparency and feathering, 614
  transparency flattener and, 682–683
graphic display settings, 477–478. *See also* screen display
graphic file formats, 472–475. *See also* graphics; names of specific formats (bitmap graphics, TIFF images, vector graphics, etc.)
graphic frames, 148. *See also* inline frames
Graphic place icon, 68
graphics. *See also* names of specific formats (TIFF images, etc.)
  alternate layouts, 110–114
  anchoring, 749
  button rollovers and states, 722–723
  captioning, 175, 178, 187–190, 463–466
  checking in Preflight, 687
  choosing file formats, 473–475
  coloring, 622–623
  conditional images, 727
  contact sheets, 472
  copying pathnames, 534
  display settings, 55–58, 476–478
  editing original files, 489
  embedded. *See* embedded graphics
  EPUB exports, 747, 749, 750, 754
  EPUB ordering, 747
  EPUB sizes, 754
  fitting features, 500, 501–503
  fonts in, 275–276
  fuzzy, troubleshooting, 476
  gathering linked images, 491, 690–691
  greeking while moving, 39
  HTML exports, 749, 756–757, 758
  image pans, 764
  image quality, 512
  image sequences, 763–764
  ImageCatalog script, 699
  importing. *See* importing graphics
  importing in merged data, 534, 535
  importing with Word files, 198
  InDesign INDD files, 483–484 as
  information about, 28
  inline, 198
  large or full-page in EPUB, 751
  linked, 484–485, 491, 690–691
  liquid page rules, 106–110
  metadata, 176, 178, 187–190, 504
  multi-state objects, 727–729
  optimizing subsampling, 662–664
  panning, 500–501
  placing. *See* placing graphics
  preserving dimensions when relinking, 61, 492
  printing as crossed-out boxes, 664
  printing proxy images, 664
  rasterizing for EPUB, 750
  redraw settings, 39
  relinking, 61, 492
  relinking to different files, 488–489
  replacing with Clipboard, 234
  resampling images, 521–522
  resizing after layout adjustments, 105
  resolution. *See* image resolution
  scaling and, 475–476, 588
  selecting frames or contents, 498–499
  slide shows, 727–729
  in table cells, 400, 402
  troubleshooting, 476
  wrapping text around. *See* text wrap
Graphics pane (Print dialog box), 662–666
Gravity path text option, 457, 458
gray boxes, displaying for graphics, 477, 664
Gray Out setting, 56
grayscale images, 512, 513, 521, 522, 662–663
grayscale PDFs, 524
Greek Type Below field, 57, 58
Greek Vector Graphics on Drag option, 39
greeking, 39, 57, 58
GREP
  finding/changing text, 226, 236–242
  nested GREP styles, 296–297
  resources for mastering, 241
  saving queries, 244
GREP panel, 236–242
GREP Styles dialog box, 296–297
Gridline Every option, 48
grids. *See also* guides
  arranging objects in, 596–597
  baseline grid, 47, 130–131, 286–289
  color of, 47
  contact sheets, 472
  custom baseline grids, 287
  document grid, 47–48, 130–131

exporting PDF files containing, 520
Grid Mode, 596–597
leading and, 156
MakeGrid script, 699
overview, 130–131
positioning in back, 48
preferences, 47–48
printing, 651
snapping and, 131
spacing, 47–48
Grids in Back option, 48
Grids Preferences dialog box, 47–48
grizzled graybeards. *See* Blatner, David; Bringhurst, Bob; Kvern, Olav Martin
Group command, 142–143
groups
Content Collector and, 495
EPUB export options, 650, 748, 751
figures and captions, 465
grouped panels, 13–14
grouping selected objects, 142–143
HTML export options, 756
layers and, 136, 142
mixed ink groups, 615–617
playing animated objects, 737
selecting in nested groups, 120
selecting objects in groups, 20, 118–119, 120, 142
style groups, 329–331
transformations and, 579
transparency in, 377–378
troubleshooting EPUB export, 750
ungrouping objects, 143
grunge effects, 382
guide adornments, 108
Guide-Based page rule, 112
guides. *See also* grids
adding around objects, 124, 698
alternate layouts, 110–114
colors, specifying, 126
column guides, 78, 119, 121–122, 123
copying, 128
creating, 123–124, 125
deleting, 128
displaying, 121, 126
document grid and, 121
editing, 124–125
exporting PDF files containing, 520
hiding, 121
layout adjustment settings, 105
liquid guides, 107–108, 119
locking and unlocking, 122, 127–128
margin guides, 78, 119
moving between layers, 126
overview, 119–121
positioning in back, 49
preferences, 48–49
printing, 651
ruler guides, 3, 108, 119, 123–128
selecting, 124
setting page layout options, 119–130
Smart Guides, 49, 50, 119, 128–130
snapping and, 120–121, 124, 131
switching between ruler and liquid guides, 108
types of, 119
Guides and Pasteboard Preferences dialog box, 48–49
Guides in Back option, 49
Gutenberg, Johannes, 645
gutters, 71, 122, 123, 145, 150

H

H&J Violations option, 43
H.264 encoded videos, 729, 731, 732, 752, 757
hairlines, 357
halftone screens, 476, 521, 615, 663
Hand tool, 18, 26, 39, 64, 65, 66
hand wringing, linked objects and, 494
handles. *See* control handles; selection handles
hanging indents, 280–281, 393
hanging punctuation, 333
hanging side heads, 439–440, 448
hanging text in margins, 290
Hard Light transparency mode, 376
hardware, optimizing for color, 629
headers or footers
dictionary-style headers, 186, 189
eBook export options, 753
phone book style, 187, 189
table header or footer rows, 402–404
table styles and, 426
text variables and, 176, 178, 185–187
headings
hanging side heads, 393, 439–440, 448
in index entries, 562
in tables of contents, 555
headline type, 257
headlines, spanning columns, 157–159
heartache. *See also* madness
color policies and, 634
numbering and, 314
Hebrew typesetting, 273, 298
height
baseline characters, 155–156
scaling and, 586
table rows, 406–407
x height and leading, 257
Height field, 587
help, 19, 37
hexagons, drawing, 22
hidden buttons, 724
hidden cells in Excel, importing, 201
hidden characters, 205, 229–230. *See also* special characters
hidden layers
finding text in, 227
hiding, 136, 138
including in indexes, 572
including in tables of contents, 558–559
text wrap and, 139
hidden objects, 136, 602
hidden panels, 38
hidden tables of contents, 718
hidden tools, 18
Hide button, 3
Hide Guides command, 121
Hide Live Corners command, 355
Hide Others command, 136
hiding
animated objects, 735
baseline grid, 121
buttons or forms, 720, 724
Content Conveyor, 495, 496
Control panel items, 34
document grid, 121
eBook objects, 747

fields, 720
guides, 121
layers, 136, 138
master page items, 101
menu items, 33
multi-state objects, 729
objects, 602
panels, 10, 12
unused index topics, 569
High Quality display setting, 55, 477
High Resolution display setting, 56
High Resolution flattening, 681, 682
high resolution images, 510, 731
Highlight Object Under Selection Tool option, 38
Highlight preferences settings, 42–44
highlighting
kerning, 44
objects under cursor, 38
simulating effect in text, 267–268
substituted fonts and glyphs, 43–44
tracking, 44
typographic problems, 42–44, 304
Highlights for Children puzzles, 338
H&J violations, 43
holes in objects, 347–349, 352, 353, 509
Honeycomb OS, 765
horizontal axis, reflecting objects, 591
horizontal folio layouts, 762
horizontal liquid guides, 107–108
Horizontal Margins field, 49
horizontal orientation, 112, 652, 762
horizontal ruler, 3, 45
horizontal ruler guides, 3
Horizontal Scaling field, 586, 587
horizontal scroll bar, 3
horizontally distributing objects, 598–601
horizontally scaling characters, 262
hourly-wages, paragraph styles and, 322
hours, in text variables, 179
HTML code
in DPS folios, 765
pasting into snippets, 756
HTML editors, 746–747, 749, 753–756, 758–760
HTML Export Options dialog box, 757–760
HTML files. *See also* tagged text and documents
Adobe Edge animation, 765
classes, 749
embedded SWF file codes, 743
exporting, 755–760
finding and changing text between tags, 239–240, 243
importing tables, 397
interactive features, 710, 711
liquid HTML articles, 762
mapping styles for export, 748
order of exported items, 746
HTML5 files, 114, 733, 752, 757, 765
http://-style URLs, 731
Hue blending mode, 376
human visual color perception, 604
Hunspell dictionaries, 50, 214–215
hybrid files, 472–473. *See also* EPS graphics; Illustrator graphics; PDF graphics and files; PICT graphics; WMF graphics
hyperlinks
appearance, 715
character styles, 713
converting URLs to, 713
creating, 711, 715
creating from URLs, 716
cross references, 191–194
deleting or resetting, 716, 717
destinations for, 713–715
displaying, 716
in DPS files, 710
editing, 713–715
EPUB tables of contents, 751
exporting documents with, 717
fast hyperlinks, 712
in Flash files, 745
in HTML files, 757
interactive file support, 711, 712–717
limitations, 733
named/unnamed, 711–712, 715, 716
not exported to HTML, 757
in PDF files, 520, 712–717
previewing, 740–741
shared destinations, 714
styles for, 715
in SWF files, 743
updating, 717
in Word files, 715
Hyperlinks option, 520
Hyphenate button, 215
hyphenation
adding words to dictionary, 215–216
consecutive hyphens, 300
controlling, 299–301
dictionaries, 50
discretionary hyphens, 301
exported text in Flash files, 745
hyphenation zone, 300
imported text, 200
language and character formatting, 263–264
multi-line composition, 298
paragraph formatting, 299–301
preventing reflow, 691
Hyphenation Settings dialog box, 299–301
Hyphenation Slider ("Nigel"), 300
hyphenation zone, 300
hyphens, 170, 300, 301

I

iBooks, 745, 750, 755. *See also* EPUB files and eBooks
iBookstore, 755, 760, 762
ICC (International Color Consortium), 524, 525, 628
icons
displaying panels as, 38
reducing panels to, 12
resizing, 79
IDE (ExtendScript Toolkit), 695
IDML files, 74, 75, 532
IDMS files, 532
IDPF Web site, 745
Ignore All button, 214
Ignore Linked Profiles policy, 637
Ignore Object and Layer Locks option, 105
Ignore Object Export Settings option, 754
Ignore Optical Margin feature, 334
Ignore Ruler Guide Alignments option, 105

Ignore Text Wrap option, 133, 153, 431
Illustrator graphics
AI files, 628, 679
AICB setting, 468
color management and, 628
importing, 468, 481–483
layers in, 483
metadata from, 178, 190
metafiles, 472–473
optimizing images for HTML, 759
placing with captions, 466
transparency and, 679
Image Import Options dialog box, 478–484, 637
image pans, 764
Image place icon, 68
image resolution
best settings, 475–476
clipping paths and, 510
displaying in Info panel, 28
exporting EPS and, 514–515
image quality, 512
monochrome images, 521, 522
optimizing printed images, 662–664
posters, 731
resampling images, 521–522
image sequences, 763–4
ImageCatalog script, 699
images. *See* bitmap graphics; GIF files; graphics; JPEG files; TIFF images; vector graphics
images folder (HTML export), 758
Images pane (HTML Export Options dialog box), 758
imagesetters and service providers
designer and service bureau responsibilities, 686
draw-downs, 614
file formats for, 686–687
packaging files for, 682, 690–691
preflight file testing, 687–690
preparing files for, 686–687
printers' sleep-talking habits, 610
screening settings and, 661
IME (Input Method Editor), 42
import filters
overview, 194–201
tagged text, 202, 246
Import Hidden Cells Not Saved in View option, 201
Import Inline Graphics option, 198, 201
Import Options dialog box
bitmap images, 478–480
EPS files, 480–481
Excel import options, 200–201
image import options, 478–484
RTF import options, 196–199
tagged text import options, 202
text import options, 199–200
Word import options, 196–199
Import Styles Automatically option, 199
Import Unused Styles option, 198
importing
audio or video files, 729–730
data. *See* importing data
graphics. *See* importing graphics
HTML files, 397, 755
master spreads and pages, 95–97
motion presets, 738
multiple files, 471–472
object styles, 454
PDF export presets, 530
print presets, 670
snippets, 60
stroke styles, 365, 366
tables, 397
text. *See* importing text
user dictionaries, 51
importing data. *See also* forms
blank lines in data file, 539
data file setup, 533–534
file metadata, 504
importing images with text, 534, 535
importing indexing with text, 569
limiting number of records, 539
master pages and, 536
merging data into InDesign, 533–540
multiple records on pages, 537, 539
overview, 533
template setup, 534–536
updating merged data, 540
importing graphics
AI graphics, 481–483
applying color to graphics, 510–511
bitmap graphics, 478–480
charts, 200
color profiles, 637–638
copying and pasting, 468
with destination frame selected, 469
dragging and dropping, 468
embedding files, 484, 489–490
EPS graphics, 473, 480–481
graphic display settings, 476–478
graphic file formats, 473–475
import methods, 468
InDesign INDD files, 483–484
inline graphics in Excel files, 201
inline graphics in Word files, 198
layer visibility, 480
linking to files, 60, 485–489
metadata and, 504
multiple files, 471–472
with no frame selected, 469, 470
object styles and, 454
overview, 468
path operations and, 352
PDF graphics, 475, 481–483
place icons, 68
placing files, 468
resizing imported graphics, 499–500
unembedding graphics, 490
video files, 729–730
importing text
cell and table styles, 428
embedding text files, 203
Excel data, 200–201, 397
HTML files, 397, 755
import filters, 194–195
index markers and, 569
inline graphics and, 198
linking to files, 60, 203
multiple files, 471–472
place icons, 68
placing text files, 194–196
quotation marks and, 197
replacing selected text, 195
RTF files, 196–199
tables, 397
tagged text, 202
text-only files, 199–200
text styles, 331–332
text variables, 180–181
updating imported text, 203
Word files, 196–199, 397, 569
XML files, 541, 542

I

imposition, 671–675
Imposition Publisher, 671
Impostrip, 671
impressing friends, 23
in ports, 159–160, 161–162
In-RIP Separations option, 658
in-RIP trapping, 659
In Use document status icons, 549, 550
inactive publication windows, 8
incandescent lighting, 629
inch measurement overrides, 16
Include Book Documents option, 572
Include Bookmarks option, 519–520
Include Deleted Text When Spellchecking option, 54
Include Document Metadata option, 754
Include Embeddable Fonts option, 755
Include Entire Folder Path option (text variables), 178
Include Entries on Hidden Layers option, 572
Include File Extension option (text variables), 178
Include Footnotes option, 228
Include Hidden layers option, 227
Include Index Section Headings option, 572–573
Include Interactive Page Curl option, 743
Include Locked Layers (Find Only) option, 227
Include Locked Stories (Find Only) option, 227
Include Master Pages option, 227
Include Note Content in Find/Change Operations option, 52
Include Note Content When Checking Spelling option, 52
Include Style Definitions option, 754, 759
Include Text in Hidden Layers option, 558–559
InCopy, 210, 212–213, 227, 486
Increment Every field, 47
InData, 533
INDD files. *See also* publications
  importing, 483–484
  using extensions, 76
indenting. *See also* tabs and tab stops
  bulleted lists, 308
  hanging indents, 280–281, 393
  HTML and EPUB exports, 749
  indented (nested) index format, 572
  paragraph formatting, 279–281
  table of contents entry levels, 558
InDesign
  online help, 4
  plug-ins, 67–68
  publications. *See* publications
  saving for earlier versions, 76–77
  scripting forum, 697
  scripting philosophy, 700
  windows and components, 2–9
InDesign Interchange (IDML) format, 74, 75, 532
InDesign Interchange (INX) format, 77, 532
InDesign Recovery folder, 77
InDesign Scripting Guide and Tutorial, 697, 703
InDesign Secrets templates, 76
InDesign Shortcut Sets folder, 30
InDesign Snippet command, 533
InDesign tagged text. *See* tagged text and documents
index entries. *See* indexes and index entries
Index panel, 11, 561. *See also* indexes and index entries
Index Style options, 573
Index Text option, 197
indexers
  eternal affection towards David, Bob, and Ole, 574
  whims of, 573–574
indexes and index entries
  adding every instance of entries, 565–566
  adding multiple entries, 565–566
  alpha section heads, 572–573
  book documents and, 572
  building indexes, 570–574
  bypassing dialog box, 565
  compared to concordances, 561
  creating entries, 561–565, 568
  cross-references, 566–568
  deleting entries, 569
  dummy, 567
  editing entries, 569–570
  finding entries, 570
  forcing entry sort order, 562, 570
  hidden layers, entries on, 572
  hyperlinked in PDF files, 520
  importing topics, 569
  importing Word/RTF files, 197, 569
  Index panel, 561
  markers not exported to HTML or EPUB, 757
  nested or run-in format, 572
  page number styles, 562
  page range options, 562–565
  page references, 568, 570
  replacing existing indexes, 572
  scope of entries, 562–565
  separators, specifying, 573–574
  sorting symbols or numbers, 570
  styles, 573
  titles, 571
INDS files, 533
INDT extension, 76
inferior formatting (subscript), 42, 262–263, 269–270, 273
Info panel, 11, 27–28
inheritance
  master spreads, 97, 98
  parent-child style relationships, 328–329, 451
Initial positional form, 273
Ink Black option, 639
Ink Limit option, 676, 677
ink lists, 605, 661
Ink Manager
  exporting EPS files and, 515
  exporting PDF files and, 524, 525
  overview, 625–626
  printing and, 662
inkjet printers, 630
inks
  black inks, 58–59, 639–640, 677
  black point compensation setting, 636
  densities, 677
  Ink Manager overview, 625
  lists, 605, 661
  matching, 58–59, 639–640
  mixed ink swatches, 614–617
  names, 675

overprinting black ink, 677
transparent objects and, 374–375
trapping. *See* trapping
turning on or off, 661
Inks list, 605, 661
Inline Background Color option, 52
inline frames. *See also* anchored objects
creating, 434–437
drop caps, 447
EPUB and HTML export, 750
hanging side heads, 439–440, 448
limitations of, 436
moving, 436–437
removing, 441
selecting, 436, 441
inline graphics, imported, 198, 201
Inline Input for Non-Latin text option, 42
INMS files, 33
Inner Bevel effect, 383, 384
Inner Glow feature, 383
Inner Shadow effect, 383
Input Method Editor (IME), 42
insanity. *See* madness
Insert Anchored Object command, 436
Insert Break Character submenu, 169
Insert Column(s) dialog box, 408
Insert HTML option, 756
"insert label" method, 703
Insert Pages command/dialog box, 83–84
Insert Row(s) dialog box, 407
Insert Special Character submenu, 92, 169
Insert Table dialog box, 396
Insert Variable submenu, 177
Insert White Space submenu, 169
Inset Spacing settings, 152
insets, 152
inside edges of clipping paths, 509
INST files, 366
instances of text variables, 175, 177, 182–183. *See also* text variables
Integrated Development Environment (IDE) (ExtendScript Toolkit), 695
Intent pop-up menu, 762
Intent settings (documents), 635–636
Intent settings (files), 70, 112
intents, rendering, 480
interactive features
animation, 733–734
audio and video files, 729–733
bookmarks, 718
buttons, 719–724
Digital Publishing Suite, 763–764
document intent settings, 70
exporting interactive files, 743–744
in Flash files, 745
hyperlinks, 712–717
interactive overlays, 763
interactivity after export, 710–711
Media panel, 731–733
multi-state objects, 727–729
overview, 710–711
page transition effects, 739
in PDF files, 520, 741–743
Presentation Mode, 740–741
previewing, 740–741
rollovers and states, 722–723
slide shows, 727–729
in SWF files, 743–744
interactive overlays, 763
Interactivity setting, 743–744
interchange formats, 195
Interface Preferences dialog box, 37–39
International Color Consortium (ICC), 524, 525, 628
International Digital Publishing Forum (IDPF), 745
Intersect path operation, 352, 353
intersecting objects, path operations and, 350–354
inverting
arrowheads, 360, 361
clipping paths, 509
path direction, 338, 361
text wrap, 430, 432
invisible animated objects, 735
invisible buttons, 724
INX files, 77, 532
IOS devices, 760–766. *See also* devices (mobile, reading, tablet)
iPads, 110, 112, 745, 752, 760–766
iPhones, 752, 760–766
irritation, scripting and, 701
ISBN numbers, 754
island spreads, 85
ISO standard PDF/X... formats, 516. *See also* PDF graphics and files
Isolate Blending option, 377
Isolated positional form, 273
italic text, 263, 264, 755, 760
itchy palms, effects and, 379
Item Information dialog box, 28
iTunes, 729

J

Japan Color setting, 631
Japan Prepress 2 setting, 631
Japanese text, 42, 298
JavaScript, 695, 704, 755, 760
JDF (Job Definition Format), 526
JGSoft RegixBuddy, 241
Join options, 358
joining paths, 346, 358
JPEG 2000 encoding, 522
JPEG files
bitmap files, 472
color spaces, 512
display performance settings, 56
EPUB images, 754
exporting documents as, 511–512
HTML export, 759
importing, 478–480
interactive document settings, 743
JPEG compression, 474
PDF specifications, 522
print settings, 662–664
resolution, 512
strengths and weaknesses of, 474
JPEG Quality pop-up menu, 743
JS files, 695
JScript, 697
JSX files, 695
Jump Object text wrap option, 429
Jump To Next Column option, 429
jumping. *See* navigating
justification
hyphenation and, 300
justified text, 44–45
last line indents, 279
letter spacing, 301–303

objects in middle of columns, 44–45
paragraph alignment, 278
really bad decisions and, 45
tracking and, 262
vertical justification, 153–154
word spacing, 301–303
Justification dialog box, 301–303, 304, 439. *See also* justification
Justify option, 154
Justify Text Next to an Object option, 44–45

K

K

Kahrel, Peter, 241
Katakana, 36
Keep Layer Visibility Overrides option, 483
keep options, 43, 304–306
Keep Options dialog box, 43, 304–306
Keep Violations option, 43
Keep within Top/Bottom Column Bounds option, 446
Kent, Clark, 602
kerning. *See also* tracking (spacing)
automatic kerning, 258–260
drop caps and, 290
highlighting manual kerning, 44
keyboard shortcuts, 47
manual kerning, 44, 257–258
Metrics method, 258–259
multi-line composition, 297–299
negative kerning, 290
Optical method, 259–260
overview, 257
pair kerning, 257, 258–260
preferences, 47
range kerning, 257, 260
removing, 258
in text outside text frames, 290
word spacing, 260
Key objects, 597
Keyboard Increments settings, 46–47
keyboard shortcuts. *See* shortcuts
Keyboard Shortcuts dialog box, 30, 31
keyword metadata in eBooks, 753
Kindle devices, 110, 112, 745, 755, 760–766
Knockout Group option, 377–378
Kodak PREPS, 671
Korean text, 42
Kuler panel, 623–624
Kvern, Olav Martin
accidents involving creation dates and chapter numbers, 180
cross references and tiny hearts, 191
descent towards madness with even-odd fills, 348
difficulties spelling "paragraph," 217
dreams about formatting and organizational goodness, 704
as driven batty by Smart Guides, 130
early childhood schoolward-bound treks in freezing cold weather, 347
equation-related panic, 694
favoritism towards furlongs and stones, 45
gloomy outlook on life, 347
great expectations for ragged lines, 303
as heartless towards inoffensive controls, 34
indexer's eternal affection towards, 574
irritating and pedantic views on drop caps, 447
K family name obsessions of, 187
"Kvern" as common household word, 215
left-leaning yet flattening-far-right tendencies of, 682
as middle-of-the-road guy, 55
Mystic Rose script, 708
nightmares about PageMaker 3.0 documentation, 389
nights at The Rocket, 249
as not getting out enough, 704
obsession for geometric art, 706
obsolete esoteric knowledge of, 184
old style numeral disagreements with David, 274
on risky but not criminal glyph behaviors, 303
as scriptmeister supreme, 694
side head self-experimentation and, 448
as spending way too much time digging in INMS files, 33
strong feelings about subsetting fonts, 526
strong stomach of, save for runts, 300
as subselector, 118
tab tzarism of, 282
uncaring attitude towards text wrap and object effects, 34
unreasonable need to spell "furi kuri," 36

L

LAB color model, 605, 621. *See also* color models
Label property, page items, 702–703
labels
figure captions, 463–466
master and layout pages, 81
Lake Minnetonka, 75
landscape orientation, 70, 112, 652, 762
language
character formatting, 263–264
dictionaries, 50
right-to-left composition, 298
versions of documents, 223
last line of paragraphs, aligning, 278
Last Line Right Indent field, 279
"last name, first name" order, 238–239, 242
Last on Page option, 178, 186
Last Page button, 3, 5
Last Page Number variable, 175, 178, 184
Late Night Software, 696
Latin text, fake, 173–175
Layer Comps command, 506
Layer Options dialog box, 138–140
Layer Visibility setting, 480
layered objects. *See* stacking order of objects
layered strokes, 359–360
layers. *See also* stacking order of objects
Acrobat layers, 742
AI and PDF files, 483
captions on, 465

copying between files, 140–141
copying or moving objects to other layers, 138, 139, 140–141
creating, 133–134, 135
deleting, 135, 140
editing layer properties, 138–140
expanding/collapsing view, 135–136
finding text in hidden or locked, 227
groups and, 136, 142–143
hidden layers, 136, 138, 139, 227
Layers panel, 11, 135–138
locked layers, 137, 139, 227, 601
master page items and, 141–142
merging, 140, 142
moving guides to other layers, 126
multi-state object stacks, 727
naming, 135, 136, 138
pasting objects, 140
PDF files and, 505, 519, 554
Photoshop files and, 474–475
printing options, 651
ruler guides on, 126, 127
selecting objects behind other objects, 117
selection colors, 136, 138
Selection Proxy, 138
showing, 136, 138
stacking order of layers, 140
stacking order of objects, 131–133
target layer, 137
text wrap and, 133, 139
unlocking, 137
unused layers, 140
visibility options, 480, 483, 505–506
Layers panel, 11, 135–138
Layout Adjustment command and dialog box, 103–105
Layout view, 763
layouts. *See* alternate layouts; page layouts; pages
LayoutZone script, 484
leaders (tab leaders), 285–286
leading
applying to entire paragraphs, 254
Auto paragraph leading, 255, 303
baseline grid and, 156, 286–289
changing, 46–47
character vs. paragraph attribute, 40, 255
characters and, 40
custom baseline grids and, 287
first baseline positioning, 155–156
keyboard shortcuts, 46–47, 256
leading creep, avoiding, 287
overview, 254–255
paragraph settings, 40, 254
Skip by Leading option, 45
solid, 257
space before and after paragraph adjustments, 154–155, 286, 287
text wrap and, 45
tips and tricks, 257
troubleshooting, 255–256
vertically-justified text and, 154
Leading method, baseline positioning, 155
Leave Unchanged option (color), 513
left double quotes (“), 39–40, 50, 197
left-hand pages, 553
Left Indent field, 279
left paragraph alignment, 278
left single quotes (‘), 39–40, 50
left tab stops, 282–283
legal document numbering schemes, 184
legs, gnawing off, 631
Let InDesign Determine Color option, 640–641
letter spacing, 44, 260, 301–303. *See also* kerning; tracking
letterhead, 87
Level option, 558
Level Style option, 573
libraries, 28, 332, 606, 610
Library panel, 28
licenses, Digital Publishing Suite, 760
ligatures, 171, 226, 269, 271, 272
Lighten transparency mode, 376
lighting, optimizing for color, 629
Limit to Primary Text Frames option, 41
Lincoln, Abraham, 306
line art, 476, 523, 682
Line Art and Text Resolution setting, 682
line breaks
auto-sizing text frames and, 157
balancing ragged lines, 304
eBooks and, 752
manual breaks, 298
multi-line composition, 298
preventing, 270
removing, 494
soft returns, 277
story window, 206
text variables and, 176
Line tool, 17, 18, 22, 336
line weight for strokes, 356–357
linear gradients, 367–368
lines and line segments. *See also* paragraph rules; paths (drawn); points; strokes
adding points to, 343
Bezier paths, 337
button rollovers and states, 722–723
control handles. *See* control handles
corner or curve points, 339
curves of, 339–340, 343, 344
dashed lines, 359
drawing, 22, 340–342
drop shadows, 380–383
erasing segments, 350, 351
feathering, 384–387
gradients. *See* gradients and gradient fills
Line tool, 17, 18, 22, 336
not exported to HTML, 757
overview, 338
removing points from, 344
stroke styles and patterns, 363–366
stroke weight, 356–357
under text, 266–267
thinking like a line, 338
through text, 268–269
transforming, 576–577
lines of text. *See also* line breaks
last line indents, 279
line counts, 27
line length, leading and, 257
nested line styles, 295–296
selecting, 40
lines per inch, 475
lining figures, 274–275
link icon, 162

L

Link Options dialog box, 494
Link Stories option, 113
Link To pop-up menu, 713–715
Link to Server Path option, 759
Link Type checkbox, 486
linked graphics and text files. *See also* linked text frames; child items; parent items
  alternate layouts, 113, 332
  checking before opening files, 60
  checking in Preflight, 687
  color profiles, 637–638
  Content Conveyor and, 19, 495–497
  Content Placer and, 485
  copying for HTML export, 758
  default relink folder, 492
  editing original graphics, 489
  embedded graphics, 485
  file information, 486
  finding linked images, 490, 491, 492
  finding missing links, 60, 492
  imported text files, 203
  limitations of text updates, 203
  linking to different file types, 488–489
  linking to Web sites, 486
  Links panel, 11, 143, 485–489
  listing fonts in, 275–276
  metadata in, 504
  missing graphics, 485, 487
  modified (out-of-date) files, 485
  opening files with, 484–485, 491–492
  overview, 484
  parent/child linked objects, 496
  placing files, 60, 468, 493–494
  preferences, 491–492
  preserving dimensions when relinking, 61
  relinking to different files, 61, 487–488
  styles in alternate layouts, 332
  updating, 61, 203, 486–487
  XMP information, 490
linked text frames
  adding new text frames, 164, 165
  alternate layouts, 113, 332
  copying and pasting, 163–164, 165
  creating, 159–164
  deleting linked frames, 163
  displaying linked frames, 148, 160–161
  flowing text, 164–167
  formatting, 250
  in and out ports, 159–160, 161–162
  link icon, 162
  merging stories, 160–161, 162
  order of frames, 163
  overset text, 160, 162
  overview, 159–160
  styles in alternate layouts, 332
  text flow icons, 164, 166
  unlinking, 162–163, 164, 165
links
  alternate layouts and, 114, 332
  bookmarks in PDF files, 718
  buttons in PDF and SWF files, 719–724
  hyperlinks. *See* hyperlinks
  link behaviors, 494
  to master page items, 102–103
  OPI links. *See* OPI images and workflows
  between text and style definitions, 316, 319, 453
  to Web site videos, 731
Links folder, 484
Links panel, 11, 143, 485–489, 491–492
Liquid Adjustment dialog box, 103–105
liquid articles, 733, 762
liquid guides, 107–108, 119
Liquid HTML5 formats, 114, 733, 762
Liquid Layout panel, 103, 106
liquid page rules
  alternate layouts and, 111, 112
  DPS folios and, 762
  layout adjustment vs., 103
  overview, 106–110
list boxes (forms), 725, 727
List view, Library panel, 28
lists. *See also* tables of contents
  bulleted and numbered, 305–314
  eBook export, 752, 753
  of fonts, 275–276
  hanging indents in, 280–281
  HTML export, 757, 758
  named lists, 311–314
  technical-style numbering, 311
lithography, invention of, 645
live captions, 463, 464, 504
Live Corners feature, 39, 354–355
Live Distribute feature, 599
Live Screen Drawing option, 39
Load All Text Styles command, 331
Load Character Styles command, 331
Load Conveyor option, 496
Load Master Pages Alert dialog box, 96
Load Object Styles command, 454
Load Paragraph Styles command, 331
Load Table and Cell Styles command, 428
Load Table Styles command, 428
Load Text Variables dialog box, 180–181, 182
loading. *See also* importing; opening
  character styles, 331
  Content Conveyor objects, 496
  Eyedropper tool, 24, 25
  master pages, 95
  object styles, 454
  paragraph styles, 331
  stroke styles, 366
  table and cell styles, 428
  text styles, 331
  text variables, 180–181
  workspaces, 34–35
  XML tags, 542
local flattener presets, 684
local formatting and overrides
  cell formatting, 427
  character styles, 319, 321
  deleting styles and, 321
  exported eBooks, 755
  local vs. global formatting, 315
  master page items, 100, 102–103
  object formatting, 452–453
  organizational goodness and, 704
  paragraph styles, 323, 324, 704
  preserving in CSS, 759
  preserving in imported text, 197
  preserving in linked objects, 494
  removing, 319, 323, 324, 453, 704
  synchronizing book files and, 551
  table formatting, 421, 427

text formatting, 197, 323, 324, 704
locations
coordinates in panels, 580–581
printer's marks, 670–671
Lock command, 127, 143–144
Lock Guides command, 127–128, 139
Lock Layer icon or option, 137
Lock Others command, 137
Lock/Unlock icon, 137
Lock Zero Point command, 7
locking
guide positions, 127–128
guides, 122, 127–128, 139
layers, 105, 137, 139, 601
lock icons, 68, 137, 143–144, 549, 550
objects, 105, 143–144, 601
PDF files, 527–528
positions, 143–144
selecting locked objects, 36
stories, 227
zero point, 7
logging text file errors, 202
long documents
books. *See* books
indexes. *See* indexes and index entries
table of contents. *See* tables of contents
lookaheads/lookbehinds (GREP), 238
Looney Farm, 575. *See also* madness
looping
animation, 737
movie files, 731
sound files, 732
Lorum Ipsum text, 173–175
lossless and lossy compression, 474, 522, 754
Low Resolution flattener style, 681, 682
lpi (lines per inch), 475
Luminosity transparency mode, 377
LZW compression, 474

M

m shortcut, 463
Macintosh scripting systems, 695–696
macros. *See* scripts and scripting
madness
even-odd fills and, 348
final pages of financial and legal documents and, 184
next odd page and, 553
non-linear and non-modal software and, 575
press operators faced with maximum ink coverages and, 375
previewing anchored objects and, 444
printing tiles and, 655
screening angles and frequencies and, 660
magazines, 760, 762, 765
magical nested styles, 293
Magnet button, 283
Magnification field, 4, 65
magnifying view. *See* zooming in or out
mailto hyperlinks, 714, 722
Maivald, James, 544
"Make It Look Good" option, 481
MakeGrid script, 699
Manage Presets dialog box, 738
manual kerning, 257–258
manual line breaks, 298
manual page breaks in Word file, 198
manual text flow, 68, 166
Manual Tiling option, 654
manual trapping, 626–627
Map Tags to Styles dialog box, 541
Map to Ordered List option, 754, 758
Map to Static Ordered List option, 758
Map to Unordered List option, 754, 758
mapping styles
with Content Conveyor, 496, 497–498
from Content Placer objects, 332
eBook export, 748–749
HTML export, 756
tagged PDF styles, 531
from Word to InDesign, 199
XML tags, 541
margin guides, 48–49, 105, 119, 520, 651
margins
alternate layouts, 110–114
EPUB and HTML export, 750, 753
guides, 48–49, 105, 119, 520, 651
insets, 152
layout adjustment settings, 105
liquid page rules, 106–110
master spread settings, 94
optical margin alignment, 333
page layout options, 82
setting, 70, 71
Margins and Columns dialog box, 82, 122, 123
markers
anchor markers, 436, 446
cross references, 191
footnote reference markers, 219
index markers, 569
page number markers, 92–93
section markers, 92
text variable instances, 175
marking GREP subexpressions, 237–240
Marks and Bleeds pane (Print dialog box), 655–657
marks, printer's, 655–657, 670–671
markup tags. *See* tagged text and documents
markups (change tracking), 198, 210, 211
marquees (selection), 115, 124
master documents, in books, 551
Master Options dialog box, 100
master page items. *See also* master spreads and pages
alternate layouts, 110–114
applying edits, 99–100, 103–105
Content Conveyor and, 497
in converted PageMaker files, 75
excluded in eBook export, 745
excluded in HTML export, 757
finding text in, 227
hiding, 101
hyperlinks, 717
layers and, 141–142
links to, 102–103
liquid page rules, 106–110
overriding, 100, 102–103
Master Page Overlay option, 88, 89
master pages. *See* master spreads and pages
Master Password setting (Permissions Password setting), 527

master spreads and pages. *See also* master page items
alternate layouts, 79, 80, 81, 110–114
applying edits, 99–100, 103–105
applying to pages, 83, 84, 97–99
basing on other spreads, 97, 98
changing or moving, 79–81, 83
color labels, 81
copying from other files, 97
creating, 94–96
deleting, 100
dividers in Pages panel, 79
duplicating, 83, 95
editing, 99–100
excluded in EPUB/HTML export, 745, 757
hiding items from, 101
importing, 95–97
inheritance, 97
layout options, 77–78, 100
Liquid HTML5 pagination, 114
liquid page rules, 106–110
master page icons, 79
merged data templates, 536
multiple page sizes, 88, 89
None master page, 83
overriding, 100, 102–103
Pages panel, 79–81, 83
primary text frames, 71, 100–101
printing master pages, 651
QuarkXPress users and, 95
reapplying, 103
sections and, 93–94
text wrap and, 432
master text frames (primary), 71, 100–101
Mastering Regular Expressions, 241
matching
color. *See* color management
finding/changing text with GREP, 236–242
font characters, 173
style names in groups, 330
math, anxiety about, 580–581
Matt's Matrix, 474, 475
Maximize button, 3
Measure tool, 18, 24, 25
measurements
Measure tool, 18, 24, 25, 26
overriding in panels, 16, 46
preferences and settings, 45–47
rulers, 6
measures. *See* columns on pages
media. *See also* audio files; video files
eBook export options, 752
interactivity in exported files, 710, 711
Media panel, 731–733
Medial positional form, 273
medication, color management and, 628
Medium Resolution flattener style, 681
megillahs, downloading, 518
memories, bad, Block cursors and, 55
memory, printer, downloadable fonts and, 665
menu bar, 3
Menu Customization dialog box, 32–33
menus and menu items, 29, 32–33, 462
Merge Cells command, 410–411
Merge Identically Named Layers on Export option, 554
Merge Layers command, 140, 142
Merge User Dictionary into Document setting, 51
merging
dictionaries, 51
layers, 140, 142, 554
objects, 350–354
panels, 13–14
stories, 160–161, 162
swatches, 619–620
table cells, 410–411
Mesh Resolution setting, 682–683
Mesopotamian printing, 645
Messages section, 674
metacharacters. *See also* special characters
escaping, 239
Find/Change dialog box, 229–230
GREP methods and, 236–242
in nested styles, 292
Posix metacharacters, 239
metadata
Alt Text options, 530
captions, 175, 178, 187–190, 463, 464
creating, 503–505
defined, 187–188
DPS folios and articles, 762–763
editing, 190
exporting for eBooks, 754
JDF (Job Definition Format), 526
searching for in files, 504–505
text variables, 175, 178, 187–190
troubleshooting messages, 466
Metadata Caption variable, 175, 178, 187–190
metallic inks, 614
Method pop-up menu, 224
Metrics kerning method, 258–259
Microsoft Excel, 194, 200–201, 397
Microsoft scripting systems, 696
Microsoft Word files
columns in, 198
endnotes in, 197
exporting as HTML, 760
footnotes in, 197
graphics in, 198
importing, 194, 196–199, 397, 569
indexes in, 197
manual page breaks in, 198
styles in, 198, 332
tables in, 197
troubleshooting placing files, 199
Min field, 156
Mini Bridge, 6
Minimize button, 3
Minimum Space Before First Footnote option, 220
Minimum Vertical Offset field (Pasteboard Options field), 49
Minus Back path operation, 353
minutes, in text variables, 179
mirrored pages, printing, 659
missing files, 60, 485, 492, 549, 550
Missing link icon, 485
Missing Profiles setting, 634
misspelled words, 51–52, 213–218
Miter Join option, 358–359
Miter Limit setting, 358–359
Mixed Ink Group Options dialog box, 617
mixed ink groups, 615–617
mixed ink swatches, 614–617
MOBI format, 745, 755
mobile devices. *See* devices (mobile, reading, tablet)
modeless dialog boxes, 747

Modification Date variable, 175, 178
modified files, 485, 549–550
modifier keys, 204–205
moiré patterns, 615, 660
Monitor Color option (color management preset), 631
monitors. *See* screen display
monochrome images (bi-level), 476, 521, 522, 663
months, in text variables, 179
motion paths, 734, 735, 736
motion presets, 734, 738
Motorola Xoom, 765
mounted beggars, 544
mouse events, 67
mouse pointing devices, 204, 719
MOV files, 729
Move dialog box, 585
Move Pages command, 86, 97
Moved Text option, 53
movies. *See* video files
moving. *See also* navigating; transformations
  around interface. *See* navigating
  documents in books, 547
  fonts to other computers, 691
  inline frames, 436–437
  items
    arrow keys, 585
    by dragging, 584
    Free Transform tool, 585
    Gap tool, 600
    between layers, 138, 139, 140–141
    Move dialog box, 585
    Transform or Control panels, 584
    while duplicating, 585
  layers between files, 140–141
  linked files, 484–485
  pages in files, 84–86
  points, 342, 344
  ruler guides, 124–126
  text on paths, 454–455
  zero point, 6–7, 45
MP3 files, 729, 732
MP4 files, 729, 731
MPEG files, 729, 732
MRK files, 671. *See also* PMD files
Multi-file place icon, 68
multi-issue viewer apps, 762
multi-level numbering, 311
multi-line composition, 297–299
multi-line form fields, 727
multi-line World Ready composers, 298
multi-state objects
  button actions for, 721
  converting to independent, 729
  creating states, 728–729
  DPS files, 710
  interactive file support, 711
  slide shows, 727–729
multi-stroke patterns, 359–360
multi-touch gestures, 38, 67
Multichannel mode (Photoshop), 474
multiline GREP searches, 238
Multiline option, 727
multimedia. *See* interactive features
multiple column headlines, 157–159
multiple files, combining. *See* books
Multiple Intersecting Links warning, 466
Multiple Master fonts, 40
multiple page sizes in files, 87–89
multiple paragraph rules, 393–394
Multiple Record Layout setting, 537, 539
Multiple Selection option, 727
multiple users, Book panel and, 550
multiple windows, opening, 7–9
Multiply blending mode, 375, 377
Murphy, Chris, 628
Mystic Rose script, 708

N

Nadesico, 378
Name metadata, 464
named colors, 604–605, 609. *See also* swatches
named hyperlinks, 711–712, 716
named lists, 311–314
names
  buttons, 719
  colors, 604–606, 609
  displaying in text variables, 187
  fonts, 252, 253
  indexing, 565
  layers, 135, 136, 138
  lists, 311–314
  matching in style groups, 330
  mixed ink groups, 615
  swapping first and last, 238–239, 242
  text variables, 177
nanotranscapacitors, 753
nauseousness, last word hyphenation and, 300
nav bars on devices, 765
navigating
  to another note, 212
  to another page, 5, 67
  Content Conveyor collections, 495
  eBook options, 751
  keyboard shortcuts, 67
  moving around on pages, 18, 26
  pages in SWF Preview panel, 740
  through slide images, 729
  via bookmarks in PDF files, 718
  via hyperlinks, 717
  video navigation points, 732
"nearest neighbor" interpolation, 683
negative creep values, 673
Negative option, 659
Neo-Atlantean super science, 155
Neon script, 699
nested bookmarks, 718
nested groups, 120
nested index format, 572
nested objects, 495, 583
nested ordered <ol> lists, 752
nested styles, 290–297, 328
.NET VB, 696
networked workgroups, 550
networks, collecting form data on, 722
New Book dialog box, 546
New Cell Style dialog box, 423–424
New Character Style dialog box, 317–318
New Color Swatch dialog box, 608, 609. *See also* swatches
New Condition dialog box, 224
New Cross Reference dialog box, 191–193
New Doc Sizes.txt file, 71
New Document dialog box, 70–73, 84
New Entry button, 561
New Glyph Set command, 174

New Gradient Swatch dialog box, 370, 371, 611–614
New Grep Style button, 296
New Hyperlink dialog box, 715
New Layer dialog box, 135, 136, 138–140
New Master dialog box, 95, 96
New Mixed Ink Group dialog box, 615–616
New Mixed Ink Swatch dialog box, 615
New Note button, 211, 212
New Object Style dialog box, 449–451
New Page Reference dialog box, 561–565
New Paragraph Style button or dialog box, 322
New Paragraph Style pane, 316
New PDF Export Preset dialog box, 529
New Print Preset dialog box, 668, 669
new publications
converting older files to, 74–75
creating, 70–73
document defaults, 70–73
New Section dialog box, 91
New Set button or dialog box, 31
New Stroke Style dialog box, 363–366
New Style Group button, 329
New Style Mapping command, 497–498
New Table Style dialog box, 424–427
New Tag button, 541
New Text Variable dialog box, 181
New Tint Swatch dialog box, 611
New Window feature, 208
New Workspace dialog box, 35
Newsprint profile, 641–642
Next Page button, 3, 5
Nigel, of Spinal Tap, 300
NINAs, 706–708
Nirvana, negative creep values and, 673
No Break option or command, 270
No Breaks option or command, 198
No Color Conversion option, 642
No CSS option, 759
No Data From Link warning, 466
No Intersecting Link warning, 466
No Line Breaks option, 157
"no pub state," 62
No Text Wrap option, 429
Noise feather corner option, 385
noise in drop shadows, 382
non-breaking hyphens, 170
non-breaking spaces, 170
non-facing pages, 70
non-Latin text, 42
non-PostScript printers, 66
non-printing objects
buttons and form fields, 726
exporting PDF files containing, 520
frames, 559
including in table of contents, 559
printing, 651
special characters, 229–230
non-rectangular frames, 155
non-Roman alphabets, 298
None master page, 83
None object style, 451, 452
None page number entry, 557
Nook devices, 745. *See also* Digital Publishing Suite; EPUB files and eBooks; eReaders
Normal blending mode, 375
Normal View Mode indicator, 18
North American Prepress 2 setting, 631
Note tool, 17, 18, 21, 211
notes
Adobe InCopy and, 211
checking spelling, 52
color, 52
converting to or from text, 212
creating, 210–212
deleting, 212
endnotes, 223
Library items and, 28
navigating through, 212
Note tool, 18, 21, 211
preferences and settings, 52
Tooltips and, 52
users and, 211
Notes panel, 210–212
Notes Preferences dialog box, 52
nudge keys (arrow keys), 46, 585
Num Lock key, 204
Number of Characters field, 289
Number of Lines field, 289
number of pages, setting, 71
Number of Recent Items to Display option, 60
Number of Sides field, 22
numbered lists
continuing numbers, 309
converting to normal text, 314
creating, 307, 309–311
eBook export options, 752, 753
hanging indents in, 280–281
HTML export, 757, 758
named lists, 311–314
removing numbers, 314
starting list numbers, 309
Numbered Paragraphs option, 559
numbering
absolute numbers, 650
across multiple documents, 314
chapters, 175, 178, 553–554
figures, 176, 311, 313
footnote styles, 219
lists. *See* numbered lists
lurking fonts and, 276
order of frames on pages and, 312
pages. *See* page numbers
paragraph styles and, 314
paragraphs, 559
sections, 36, 552, 553, 650
styles, 178
tables, 311
tables of contents and, 559
updating numbers, 553–554
Numbering & Section Options dialog box, 91, 552, 553–554
numbering pages. *See* page numbers
Numbering Style option, 178, 219
numbers
Arabic numerals, 90, 92
converting CMYK or RGB, 523–524, 642
converting to paths, 434
full-height numerals, 274–275
lining figures, 274–275
lists. *See* numbered lists
numerals, 263, 274–275, 310
old style numerals, 274–275
ordinal numbers, 272
pages. *See* page numbers
prefixes, page numbers, 90, 92
preserving CMYK or RGB, 523–524, 634, 637, 639, 641–642
removing, 314
roman numerals, 90, 92, 310

sorting in indexes, 570
text variables, 179
updating, 553–554
numerator characters, 274

O

OAM files, 756, 765
object-based page rules, 108–109, 112
Object Export Options dialog box, 530–531, 747–748, 757
Object Export Settings dialog box, 756
Object Layer Options dialog box, 505–507
object states, 711, 721, 727–729
Object States panel, 727–729
object styles. *See also* objects
applying, 452–453
basing on existing styles, 451
breaking links to objects, 453
creating, 449–451
default, 451
deleting, 453
editing, 453
importing from other documents, 454
local object formatting and, 452–453
Quick Apply feature, 460–463
rearranging in panel, 452
shortcuts for, 451
updating, 449
Object Styles panel, 11, 449, 450, 452
objects. *See also* object styles
aligning, 597–598
aligning to Key objects, 597
alternate layouts, 110–114
applying effects to, 379–380
converting to motion paths, 736
converting to shapes, 353–354
copying between layers, 140–141
deselecting, 116–117
distributing, 598–601
drop shadows, 380–383
duplicating with Step and Repeat, 585
excluded in HTML export, 757
exporting as snippets, 532–533
finding/replacing formatting, 144–146
fitting on screen, 63–65
flipping or reflecting, 458, 459, 591
frequently-used, 28
grids of, 596–597
grouping or ungrouping, 142–143
hiding, 602
highlighting under cursor, 38
liquid page rules, 106–110
location, 28
locking object positions, 143–144
moving. *See* moving
multi-state objects, 721, 727–729
object-based page rules, 108–109
object states, 711, 721, 727–729
pasting to original layers, 140
pinning while resizing, 108–109
positioning ruler guides around, 124
removing from frames, 704–706
resizing. *See* resizing
rotating. *See* rotating objects
screen display of, 55
selecting. *See* selecting objects
sets in Content Conveyor, 496, 497
stacking order. *See* stacking order of objects
subselecting, 118–119, 142
transforming multiple, 579
wrapping text around. *See* text wrap
Objects Move with Page option, 89
odd and even pages, 553, 650–651
odd-even fills, 348–349
Odd Pages Only option, 651
Off page rule, 107
Offset setting (leading), 156
Offset setting (printer's marks), 657
Offset setting (printing), 652
offsets
captions, 465
leading, 156
printer's marks, 657
printer's paper offset, 652
text wrap, 429
 tags, 752, 758
old style numerals, 274–275
Omit For OPI setting, 515, 526, 666
On Blur event, 719
On Focus event, 719
On Page Load event, 734
On Roll Off event, 724
On Roll Over event, 724, 734
on-screen colors, 606
On Self Click event, 734
online files, 518
online help, 4
Only Align First Line to Grid feature, 289
opacity. *See also* transparency
animated objects, 735, 738
drop shadows, 381
gradient stops and, 614
Open a File dialog box, 72, 73
open (<) angle bracket, 247
Open Copy option, 74
Open document status icons, 549
Open Documents as Tabs option, 38
Open File action, 721
Open In Full Screen Mode option, 742
Open Original option, 74
Open Path button, 354
open paths
arrowheads and tailfeathers, 360, 361
closing, 344–346, 354
erasing line segments, 350, 351
opening
closed paths, 344–346
copies of files, 74
documents as tabs, 38
documents with links, 60, 484–485, 491–492
files, 73–75, 721
multiple windows, 7–9
original files, 73–74, 489
Reader to view PDF files, 519
stationery, 74
templates, 73–74
OpenType fonts
character settings, 36
finding glyphs, 242–245
fractions, 271–272
glyphs in, 172
ligatures, 269, 271, 272
numbers of characters in, 36
numerals, 274–275
OpenType submenu, 252
overview, 269, 270–275
positional forms, 273
stylistic sets, 273
OpenType submenu, 252

operating system failures, 77
OPI Image Replacement setting, 515, 666–667
OPI images and workflows
  exporting EPS graphics, 515
  exporting PDF graphics, 526
  image links, 480–481
  importing EPS graphics, 480–481
  printer settings, 666–667
  transparency issues, 680
Optical kerning method, 259–260
optical margin adjustment, 290
optical size in multiple master fonts, 40
Optimize for Fast Web View option, 518
Optimized Display setting, 55
Optimized option, 759
Optimized Subsampling option, 662–664
optimizing
  images for printing, 662–664
  images for Web display, 518, 759
  screen display, 55, 477
optional pages, 114
order of items
  in animation, 737
  in eBooks, 746, 753
  in HTML export, 756, 758
  linked text frames, 160–162
  on pages. *See* stacking order of objects
  tab order in PDF files, 722, 743
ordered lists, 754, 758
ordinal numbers, formatting, 272
organizational goodness, local formatting and, 704
orientation
  articles, 762
  document pages, 78, 104
  folios, 761
  mixing in books, 546
  output pages, 652
  tablet device screen layouts, 112, 762
Orientation setting, 652
original files, opening, 73–74, 489
ornamental characters, 173, 242–245, 316
orphans, preventing, 304–306
OSA/AppleEvents, 697
OSA JavaScript, 697
out-of-date linked objects, 493–494
out-of-gamut colors, 611, 621, 635–636
Out of Gamut warning, 611, 621
out ports, 159–160, 161–162
Outer Bevel effect, 383, 384
Outer Glow feature, 383
outline fonts, 432–434
outlines. *See also* compound paths
  converting strokes to outlines, 683
  converting text to outlines, 432–434, 683
  not exported to HTML, 757
  transparency flattener and, 683
output. *See also* exporting; printing
  black inks and, 58–59
  dates on, 176, 178, 184
  output providers. *See* imagesetters and service providers
  PDF export options, 523–525
  print options, 657–662
  profile information, 524
  resolution and, 521–522
  settings for, 657–662
Output All Blacks Accurately option, 59
Output All Blacks As Rich Blacks option, 59
Output Condition Name field, 525
Output Date variable, 176, 178, 184
output destination profiles, 525
Output Intent Profile Name option, 525
output options (PDF export), 523–525
Output pane (Print dialog box), 657–662
output providers. *See* imagesetters and service providers
oval dots in stroke patterns, 363
overflow text. *See* overset text
overlapping objects. *See* stacking order of objects
Overlay Assets folder, 690
Overlay blending mode, 376
overlays
  animation, 765
  creating interactivity, 763–764
  "DPS Tips" app, 764
  previewing interactive features, 740
  transferring, 690
Overprint [Black] Swatch at 100% option, 59
Overprint Preview command, 269
overprinting. *See also* trapping
  black inks, 59, 677
  previewing, 677
  simulating, 512, 524, 662
  strokes, 360
  transparency issues, 680
overrides. *See also* local formatting and overrides
  graphic display settings, 477–478
  layer visibility and, 483, 506–507
  linked object preferences, 494
  master page items, 100, 102–103
  measurement overrides, 16
  removing, 319, 323, 324, 453, 704
  synchronizing book files and, 551
  units of measurement, 16, 46
overset text
  + sign, out port, 156, 160
  applying text formatting to, 250
  auto-sizing frames, 156–157
  from data merges, 537
  finding text in, 229
  HTML exports and, 758
  placing, 162, 163
  Smart Text Reflow option, 41
  in table cells, 398
overwriting older book documents, 548

P

p shortcut, 463
<p> tags, 759
Package Book for Print command, 554
Package Publication dialog box, 692
packaging
  folio source files, 690
  publications, 554, 692
padding, EPUB and HTML export, 750
padlocks, 68, 137, 143–144, 549, 550

page breaks
converting to column breaks, 198
eBook export and, 750, 754
imported Word files, 198
Keep options, 43, 304–306
Page field and Page pop-up menu, 3, 5
Page Information option, 656
page items
alternate layouts, 110–114
applying master edits to, 103–105
applying transparency, 374
feathering, 384–387
Label property, 702–703
liquid page rules, 106–110
on master spreads, 94–95
Page Layout option, 758
page layout rules, 106–110, 762
page layouts
adjusting layouts, 100–101, 103–105
alternate layouts, 110–114
applying master edits to, 103–105
arranging pages in spreads, 84–86
columns, 119, 121–122, 123
document defaults, 70–73
drag and drop text, 41, 205–206
eBook exports, 745
grids, 130–131
grouping objects and, 142–143
guides, 119–130
layers, 133–142
liquid guides, 119
liquid page rules, 106–110, 762
locking object positions, 143–144
margin guides and settings, 119
master spreads, 94–102
mixing in books, 546
overriding master items, 100, 102–103
page orientation, 78, 104
page size, 70, 71, 78, 103–105, 650
previewing for DPS, 764
ruler guides, 119, 123–128
sections, 90–92
setting layout options, 70–73, 77–78
Smart Guides, 119
XML in layout process, 540–541
Page Limit Per Document setting, 539
Page Number options (tables of contents), 557
Page Numbering preferences, 36
page numbers. *See also* page references
absolute numbers, 650
books and, 546, 548, 549, 552–553
excluded in eBook export, 745
index references, 561–565, 568, 570
index styles, 562
markers, 92–93
numbering pages, 90–93
odd and even numbers, 553
Page X of Y schemes, 184
preferences, 36
prefixes, 90, 92
printing page ranges, 649–650
renumbering, 546, 548, 549
sections and, 90–92
starting numbers, 71
systems, 92–93
tables of contents styles, 557
text variables for, 176
page orientation, 78, 104
Page Position pop-up menu, 653
page ranges
alternate layouts, 112
exporting PDF files, 517–518
index entries, 562–565
printing, 649–650
page references (indexes), 561–565, 568, 570
page size
alternate layouts, 110–114, 112
editing, 79
layout adjustment settings, 103–105
liquid page rules, 106–110
mixing sizes in books, 546, 650
setting up, 70, 71, 78
Page tool, 17, 18, 20
page transitions
DPS issues, 763
exporting to Flash files, 745
exporting to PDF files, 742
exporting to SWF files, 743–744
interactive file support, 711
not exported to HTML, 757
Page Transitions panel, 739
playing sounds, 732
previewing, 740–741
Page Transitions option, 742
Page Transitions panel, 739
Page X of Y numbering schemes, 184
Page zero point option, 45
PageControl plug-in, 673
PageMaker 3.0 documentation, 389
PageMaker files, 74, 75, 247–248
PageMaker shortcuts, 31
pages. *See also* Pages panel
adding or removing automatically, 113
adding to publications, 82–84
alternate layouts, 110–114
applying master edits to, 103–105
applying master pages or spreads, 83, 84, 97–99
arranging in Pages panel, 79–81
arranging in spreads, 84–86
breaks, 43, 198, 304–306
color labels, 81
coordinates on, 580–581
creating, 79
curled page effect, 743
defaults for, 62
deleting, 79
duplicating, 83
flexible column widths, 151
flipping automatically, 742
hiding master items, 101
HTML5 pagination options, 114
hyperlinks to, 714, 716
icons, 81–82, 83
illustrated, 3
information about, 656
items on. *See* page items
jumping to with buttons, 720
layers, 133–142
layout. *See* page layouts
liquid page rules, 106–110
multiple sizes in files, 87–89, 650
navigating through, 5, 62–67
numbering. *See* page numbers
optional, in alternate layouts, 114
orientation, 78, 104
overriding master items, 100, 102–103
pasteboard and, 4–5

P

PDF export options, 740–741
playing media on display, 731, 732
selecting, 81–82
setting number of, 71
setting up, 77–78
shuffling, 86
size. *See* page size
Smart Text Reflow option and, 41
targeting, 81
thumbnails of, 80
transition effects, 739
zero point setting, 45
Pages panel
adding pages to publications, 82–83
alternate layouts in, 79, 80, 81
applying masters, 97, 99
arranging pages, 79–81
creating master spreads, 95, 97, 98
dividers in, 79
options, 80
overview, 79–82
selecting pages or spreads, 81–82
shortcuts, 11
Pages Panel Options dialog box, 80
Pages setting (EPS export), 513
Pages setting (PDF import), 481–482
pain relievers, typography and, 206
pair kerning, 257, 258–260
panels. *See also* names of specific panels
bringing to front, 10
closing, 10
combining and separating, 13–14
display options, 12, 38
displaying as icons, 38
dragging objects under, 66
floating panels, 3
focus in, 9–10
formulas and arithmetic in, 16
hiding, 10, 12, 38
overriding measurement units, 16
overview, 9–17
panel groups, 13–14
reducing to icons, 12
resizing, 12
saving workspaces, 34–35
small or large panel rows, 15
snapping into position, 13
stacking, 13–14
tabbed panels, 13–14
zipping and unzipping, 10
panic, pre-deadline, 213
panning graphics, 500–501
panoramas, 763
pans, image, 764
Pantone inks, 610
Pantone swatch books, 629–630
Pantone swatch libraries, 606
Pantone Two-Color Selector, 614
paper
color, 612, 639, 640
offset, specifying, 652
orientation, 652
stock, 629, 636
Paper Size pop-up menu, 652
Paper swatch, 612
Paper White option, 639
Paragraph Composer, 278, 298, 303
paragraph counts, 27
paragraph formatting. *See also* character formatting; paragraph styles
alignment, 278, 289
applying to all characters, 277
Auto paragraph leading, 255, 303
baseline grid and, 286–289
boxes around paragraphs, 411, 412
bulleted lists, 307–309
carriage returns and leading, 256
column breaks, 304–306
drop caps, 289–290
Eyedropper tool and, 24, 25
first line alignment, 289
first line indentation, 279–281
hanging indents, 280–281
hanging text outside text frames, 290
highlighting composition issues, 304
hyphenation controls, 299–301
indents, 279–281
justification, 301–303
keep options, 304–306
last line alignment, 278
leading. *See* leading
letter spacing, 301–303
multi-line composition, 297–299
numbered lists, 307, 309–314
overview, 276–277
page breaks and, 304–306
Paragraph panel, 11, 278
paragraph rules. *See* paragraph rules
selecting text for formatting, 277
spaces between words, 41
spacing between paragraphs, 154–155, 158, 286
styles. *See* paragraph styles
tabs and tab stops, 281–286
tinting paragraphs, 392–393
widows and orphans, 304–306
word spacing, 301–303
Paragraph panel, 11, 278. *See also* paragraph formatting
paragraph rules. *See also* liquid page rules
applying, 390
converting text to outlines and, 434
footnotes and, 222
hanging indents and, 393
options and guidelines, 390–394
tinting paragraphs with, 392–393
Paragraph Rules dialog box, 390–392
Paragraph Spacing Limit setting, 154–155
Paragraph Style Export Tags option, 754
Paragraph Style option, 220
Paragraph Style Options dialog box, 531, 756
paragraph style tags (PageMaker), 247–248
paragraph styles. *See also* Paragraph Styles panel; tables
alternate layout style groups, 113
alternate layouts, 111, 332
applying to index entries, 573
applying to text, 316, 323–324
Basic Paragraph style, 321–322
basing on example text, 322
basing on existing styles, 328–329
bullets and numbers in, 314
captions, 465

copying from other files, 331–332
creating, 322–323
deleting, 327
deleting text with specified styles, 236
eBook page breaks and, 751
external CSS files and, 760
floppy disk icon, 332
fonts in, 275–276
footnote styles, 220
imported text styles, 202
links to text, 316, 319
mapping for HTML export, 756
mapping with Content Conveyor, 332, 496, 497–498
modifying, 324–325
names out of order, 316
nested GREP styles, 296–297
nested styles, 290–297, 328
Next Style feature, 325–327
organizational goodness and, 704
PageMaker tags, 247–248
paragraph rules. *See* paragraph rules
parent-child relationships, 328–329
Quick Apply feature, 460–463
removing from text, 324
removing overrides, 704
resetting to base styles, 329
saving in libraries, 332
setting defaults, 62
split columns, 159
Story Editor and, 209
style groups, 329–331
styles, defined, 315
synchronizing book files, 551–552
tables of contents and, 555
tagged PDFs, 531
text variables and, 176
unused styles, 327
Paragraph Styles panel, 11, 315, 323–327, 331–332, 748. *See also* paragraph styles
paragraphs
counting, 27
as cross reference destinations, 191
formatting. *See* paragraph formatting
numbered, in tables of content, 559
page ranging for index entries, 564
re-ragging, 303–304
selecting, 40
sorting, 700
styles. *See* paragraph styles
tinting, 392–393
paranoia, practicality and, 527
parent layouts, 114
parent linked objects, 493–494, 496
parent master spreads, 97, 98
parent pages in alternate layouts, 112
parent stories in alternate layouts, 113
parent style documents, 497
parent style relationships, 328–329, 451
parentheses, 114, 239
passwords, 527–528, 726
Paste In Place command, 349
Paste Remembers Layers option, 140
pasteboard
Content Conveyor objects and, 497
contents falling off of, 501
increasing size of, 49
indexed text on, 565
items in converted files, 75
objects not exported to HTML, 757
overview, 4–5
ruler guides and, 123
Pasteboard Options field, 49
Pasteboard XTension, 49
pasting. *See also* copying
content into HTML editors, 760
duplicating objects, 349
graphic files, 468
HTML code into snippets, 756
linked text frames, 163–164, 165
objects from Content Conveyor, 19
objects inside other objects, 20
objects into states, 729
objects to original layers, 140
paths or PDF data, 61
replacing with Clipboard, 234
retaining or losing formatting, 61
tables, 61
text, 61, 148, 194, 760
path operations, 350–354. *See also* paths (drawn); transformations
path text
creating, 454–460
Path Type tool, 17, 18, 21, 454
path type. *See* path text
Path Type tool, 17, 18, 21, 454
PathEffects script, 699
Pathfinder panel, 11, 350–354
paths (drawn). *See also* clipping paths; file paths; lines and line segments
arrowheads and tailfeathers, 360, 361
clipping paths. *See* clipping paths
compared to frames, 335
compound paths, 347–349
contents of, 352, 577–578
control handles. *See* control handles
Convert Shape operations, 350–354
converting text or strokes to, 432–434, 683
converting to motion paths, 736
copying from Illustrator files, 468
copying on Clipboard, 61
corner effects, 354–355, 356
corner or curve points, 339
direction of, 338
drawing, 17, 21–22, 340–349
drop shadows, 380–383
editing tools, 17, 18
erasing, 350, 351
feathering, 384–387
filling, 366–367
formatting attributes and, 338
freeform, 21–22
glow effect, 699
gradients. *See* gradients and gradient fills
holes in closed paths, 347–349
joining, 346
moving points, 344
open and closed paths, 344–346, 354
order or winding, 335
path operations, 350–354
PathEffects script, 699

P

placing text on paths. *See* path text
points. *See* points
points on, 336
rasterizing, 756
reversing direction, 338, 354, 361
selecting points, 344
smoothing, 349–350
strokes. *See* strokes
text on. *See* path text
text wrap around, 428
transforming, 577–578
winding, 338
paths (files)
copying full paths, 491, 534
font files, 691
HTML images, 759
paths (motion), 734, 735, 736
patience of PeachPit Press, xi, 301
patterns
patterning, avoiding in print, 660
stroke styles and patterns, 363–366
pausing animation, 721
PB page number, 565
PDF export presets, 528–530
PDF graphics and files
accessibility, 518–519, 530–531
Acrobat layers, 742
Acrobat Reader compatibility, 517
active TOCs and indexes, 520
advantages of, 473
animation, 733, 738
audio and video in, 729–733
audio and video limitations, 733
bookmarks in, 519–520, 718
button tooltips in, 726
buttons in, 719–724
choosing graphic file formats, 473
color management, 483, 628, 640, 642–644
color models, 516
compared to EPS graphics, 473, 475
compression options, 520–523
copying on Clipboard, 61
cropping images, 523
display performance settings, 56
embedded fonts, 525–526
encoding methods, 522
exporting
books as, 554
interactive files, 741–743
overview, 515–516
PDF export presets, 516, 528–530
saving export options, 528–530
XML structure tags to PDF, 544
forms, 722, 724–726
grayscale, 524
guides and grids in, 520
hyperlinks in, 520, 712–717
ICC profiles, 524, 525
importing
layers in, 483, 505
multiple pages, 481–482
placing as graphics, 481–483
imposition plug-ins, 671
interactivity, 520, 710, 711, 729–733
layers in, 483, 505, 519
metadata in, 504, 505
multi-state objects in, 727–729
non-printing objects in, 520
OPI settings, 667
optimizing for online viewing, 518
page transition effects, 739
PDF/X-1a, PDF/X-3, and PDF/X-4 files, 516, 524, 525, 642–644
placing graphics, 481–483
placing with captions, 466
Presentation Mode, 740–741
previewing, 740–741
printing imposed booklets to, 675
resampling images, 521–522
security and DRM, 527–528
simulating overprinting, 524
slide shows in, 727–729
tables of contents, 519–520
tagged PDF files, 518–519
thumbnails, 518
transparency and, 374, 679, 744
types of, 515–516
PDF place icon, 68
PDF Print Engine, 374, 648, 665, 678
PDF/X options, 524, 525
PDF/X3 standard, 642
PeachPit Press, kind generosity and patience of, xi, 301
Pen tool, 17, 18, 21, 340–342, 750
Pencil tool, 17, 18, 21–22, 340, 341
pentagons, drawing, 22
percentages
in colors, 621
magnifying screen by, 65
in panel displays, 582, 587
scaling objects and, 588
Perceptual rendering intent, 480, 635
perfect-bound imposition, 672, 673
performance and speed
downloadable fonts and, 664–665
dragging causes slowdown, 39
flattener preview and, 684
font preview size and, 41
graphic display settings, 477
plug-ins and, 68
printing speed, 662
screen display preferences, 55
Tool Tips and, 37
transparent objects and, 373
periods, 239
Perl scripts, 697
permissions for PDF, 528
Permissions Password settings, 527
pesky text, 323
Phillips, Matt, 387, 474, 475
philosophy of scripting, InDesign, 700
phone book style headers, 187, 189
Photoshop graphics
applying colors to, 622–623
characteristics of, 473–475
clipping paths, 478–479, 481
flattened files, 474–475
graphic file formats, 472, 475
imported bitmaps, 478–480
layer comps, 506
layer visibility, 480
layers in files, 474–475
metadata from, 178, 190
Multichannel mode, 474
optimizing for HTML, 759
transparency and, 374, 679
pi, 314
picas, 16, 46
PICT graphics, 473
Pillow Emboss effect, 383, 384

pink highlights, dreaded, 43, 242, 253, 304
pinning objects while resizing, 108–109
pixels
  alternate layouts and, 112
  designing layouts for tablets, 110
  document intent settings, 70
  override abbreviation, 16
  pixels per inch (ppi), 475–476
Place and Link command, 485, 493–494
Place command or dialog box, 164, 166–167, 195–196, 468, 469–472
Place End of Story Footnotes at Bottom of Text option, 221
place icons, 37, 68, 470–471
Place PDF dialog box, 481–483
placeholders
  dummy text, 173–175
  text variables, 184
Placeholder.txt file, 174
PlaceMultipagePDF script, 482, 699
placing graphics
  AI graphics, 481–483
  bitmap graphics, 478–480
  coloring imported graphics, 510–511
  contact sheets, 472
  Content Conveyor options, 495–497
  with destination frame selected, 469
  display settings, 476–478, 513–514
  embedding files, 484
  EPS graphics, 473, 475, 480–481
  layer visibility, 480
  linking to files, 484
  multiple files, 471–472
  with no frame selected, 469, 470
  overview, 468
  PDF graphics, 473, 475, 481–483
  Place command, 469–472
  place cursors, 37, 68, 470–471
  placing and linking, 493–494
  resizing imported graphics, 499–500
placing text. *See also* importing text
  basics of, 195–196
  Content Conveyor options, 495–497
  multiple files, 471–472
  on paths. *See* path text
  place cursors, 37, 68, 470–471
  PlaceMultipagePDF script, 699
  placing and linking, 493–494
Plain point conversion, 354
plates, previewing, 675–677
Platform setting, 199
platforms
  designating for imported text, 199
  operating system failures, 77
  scripting and, 695
  specifying in tagged text files, 247
Play on Page Load option, 732
Play Together button, 737
playing animation, 721, 737
playing audio or video files, 729–733
plug-ins
  Adobe InCopy, 212–213
  InDesign scripting philosophy, 700
  managing, 67–68
  Package, 682, 690–691
  Preflight, 687–690
plus signs (+), 156, 160, 315–316, 325
PMD files, 671
PNG files, 511–512
Point/Pica Size settings, 46
point size of type
  adjusting when scaling, 36–37
  character formatting, 253–254
  fonts with optical size axis, 40
  greeking and, 57, 58
  increasing and decreasing, 46
  leading and, 257
  measurement override abbreviation, 16
  size of points, redefining, 46
  super- and subscript, 269–270
  tracking and, 261
points. *See also* lines and line segments
  adding or deleting, 22, 343–344, 698
  Bezier paths, 337
  changing position of, 342
  control handles. *See* control handles
  convert operations, 354
  converting, 340, 342
  corner and curve points, 339
  moving, 344
  paths. *See* paths (drawn)
  in paths, 335
  selecting, 20, 344
  transforming, 576–577, 578
points per inch, 754
Polygon Frame tool, 17, 18
Polygon Settings dialog box, 22, 23
polygons and Polygon tool, 17, 18, 22–23, 336, 354, 757
pop-up menus, 29
Portable Document Format. *See* PDF graphics and files
portrait orientation, 112, 652, 762
Position option, 220
Position tool. *See* Content Grabber tool; Page tool
positional forms (fonts), 273
positioning. *See also* moving
  above line objects, 441–442
  anchored objects, 444–446
  baseline positioning, 155–156
  Content Grabber, 500
  footnotes, 220
  inline frames, 436–437
  Page tool, 18, 20
  ruler guides around objects, 124
Posix metacharacters, 239
postcards, 110
posters (preview images), 710, 731, 732–733, 765
PostScript fonts, 253, 691
PostScript interpreters. *See* RIPs
PostScript language and files
  device-independent files, 647
  InDesign support for, 513
  levels, 513, 665–666
  PPDs, 646–647
  printing to disk, 647
  transparency, support for, 677–678
PostScript Level setting, 665–666
PostScript Printer Descriptions, 646–647
PostScript Printer Determines Color option, 641
PostScript setting (EPS files), 513
Power Zoom shortcut, 64, 65
PPDs, 646–647
ppi (pixels per inch), 475–476

P

Prefer PDF When Pasting option, 61
Preferences dialog box
appearance of black, 58–59
Autocorrect, 52, 53
Clipboard, 61
composition, 42–45, 304
defaults, 62
dictionaries, 49–51
display performance, 55–58
file handling, 59–61
general preferences, 36–37
grids, 47–48
guides and pasteboard, 48–49
interface preferences, 37–39
link handling, 491–492
notes, 52
overview, 35–36
Smart preferences, 129–130
Story Editor, 54–55
track changes, 53–54
troubleshooting loss of settings, 35–36
type, 39–41
units and increments, 45–47
prefixes, page numbers, 90, 92
Preflight Options dialog box, 690
Preflight panel, 11, 687–690
Preflight pop-up menu, 5
Preflight profiles, 688–689
Preflight Profiles dialog box, 688–689
Preflight reports, 690
prepress files, 647
Prepress option, 631–632
Presentation Mode, 740–741
presentations, 727–729, 740–741
Preserve Appearance from Layout option, 759
Preserve Appearance option, 754
Preserve CMYK Numbers option, 639, 641–642
Preserve Embedded Profiles setting, 633–634
Preserve Facing-Page Spreads option, 41
Preserve Formatting option (object styles), 453
Preserve Image Dimensions When Relinking option, 61
Preserve Local Edits option, 494
Preserve Local Formatting option, 421
Preserve Local Overrides option, 197, 755, 759
Preserve Numbers (Ignore Embedded Profile) option, 634
Preserve Numbers (Ignore Linked Profiles) option, 642
Preserve Numbers option (PDF export), 523–524
Preserve Numbers policy, 637
Preserve Object-Level View Settings option, 55
Preserve Page Breaks option, 198
Preserve PDF Data At Quit option, 61
Preserve Styles and Formatting from Text and Tables option, 197
presets
color management presets, 630–632
document presets, 72–73
flattener presets, 681–683
motion presets, 734, 738
page size presets, 72–73
PDF export presets, 516, 528–530
print presets, 668–670
saving, 72
styles compared to presets, 73
text variable presets, 177
preventing
line breaks in text, 270
orphans and widows, 304–306
reflow, 691
transformation, 601
preview images. *See also* proxies and proxy images
EPS files, 481, 513–514
linked graphics, 484
PDF files, 518
place cursors, 37
posters, 710, 731, 732–733, 765
saving, 60
Preview Mode indicator, 18
Preview panel (SWF Preview panel), 11, 740
Preview setting (EPS files), 513–514
previewing. *See also* preview images
Adobe Content Viewer, 740, 762
anchored object positioning, 444
apps in Content Viewer, 762
booklet imposition, 674
browser previews, 740
color separations, 675–677
DPS content, 740, 760, 764
eBooks, 753
effects, 379
flattener settings, 684–685
font preview size, 41
interactive documents, 740–741
interactive DPS overlays, 740
merged data, 536, 537
mixed ink groups, 616
overprinting and trapping effects, 677
problem tags in text import, 202
stroke styles, 363
target previews for folios, 764
text variables, 181
video controller skins, 732
Previous Page button, 3
previously immutable laws of physics, 466
Primary Text Frame option, 71
primary text frames, 71, 100–101, 110, 111
Print as Bitmap option, 666
Print Blank Pages option, 651
Print Booklet dialog box, 671–675
Print Booklet to PDF command, 675
Print dialog box
Advanced pane, 666–668
Color Management pane, 640–642
General pane, 648–651
Graphics pane, 662–666
Ink Manager. *See* Ink Manager
Marks and Bleeds pane, 655–657
for non-PostScript devices, 648
Output pane, 657–662
overview, 646–648
print presets, 668–670
Print Preview features, 648
printer driver settings, 647–648
saving settings as text file, 668
Setup pane, 652–655
Summary pane, 668
Print Form action, 722
Print Form button, 726
Print Intent setting, 70
Print Layers option, 651
Print Master Pages option, 651

Print Non-Printing Objects option, 651
print presets, 668–670
Print Presets dialog box, 668–670
Print Preview features, 648
Print Visible Guides and Baseline Grids option, 651
Printable option (buttons or forms), 726
printer fonts, 432
Printer Profile pop-up menu, 641
printer spreads, 518, 651, 671–675
printer styles (print presets), 668–670
printers. *See also* printing
  color management, 627–628
  color printers, 630
  in-RIP trapping, 659
  inkjet printers, 629, 630
  PostScript level, 665–666
  print presets, 668–670
  printer driver settings, 647–648
  profiles, 640–641
  roll-fed printers, 652
  saving settings as text file, 668
printer's marks, 655–657, 670–671
printing. *See also* printers
  animated objects, 734–735
  bitmap image settings, 662–664
  black inks, 58–59
  blank pages, 651
  blank space between pages, 652
  bleed marks, 655, 657
  booklets, 671–675
  books, 546, 554
  collating pages, 649
  color
    as black, 658–659
    black inks, 58–59
    color bars, 656
    color profiles, 640–642
    color separations, 657–658
    composite color, 657–658
    inks, turning on or off, 661
    printing process and, 604
    process colors, 604
    spot colors, 604
  covers, 650
  crop marks, 655
  custom time and date stamps, 184
  document intent settings, 70
  downloadable fonts, 664–665
  even or odd pages, 650–651
  file and page information, 656
  flattener. *See* flattener
  forms, 722
  grayscale PDFs, 524
  guides and grids, 651
  halftone screening, 659–661
  history of, 645
  imposition, 671–675
  in-RIP separations, 658
  in-RIP trapping, 659
  including instructions, 691
  keyboard shortcut list, 32
  layers, 651
  master pages, 651
  mirroring pages, 659
  multiple page sizes, 650
  negatives, 659
  non-printing objects, 651
  overprinting, simulating, 662
  packaging files for, 682, 690–691
  page position for, 653
  page ranges, 649–650
  pages in reverse order, 649
  paper offset, 652
  paper orientation, 652
  paper size, 652
  PDF files with transparency, 374
  PostScript levels and, 665–666
  preflight file testing, 687–690
  presets, 668–670
  previewing, 648
  printer's marks, 655–657, 670–671
  proxy images, 664
  registration marks, 656
  remote printing, preparing for, 686–687
  resident fonts, 664
  saving settings as text file, 668
  scaling printer output, 653
  spreads on single sheet, 651
  thumbnails, 654
  tiled output, 654–655
  transparent objects, 373–374
  trapping. *See* trapping
Printing Instructions dialog box, 690, 692
process colors. *See also* spot colors
  choosing color model, 605
  converting between spot and process, 617, 625
  creating, 609
  halftone screen settings, 660
  in InDesign publications, 605
  Ink Manager, 625
  inks, turning on or off, 661
  in mixed ink groups, 617
  in mixed ink swatches, 615
  printed color samples, 630
  printing, 604
productivity increases, joy of, 226
Profile Inclusion Policy pop-up menu, 525, 643
Profile Mismatches settings, 634
Profile setting, 480
profiles. *See* color profiles; device profiles; Preflight profiles
Progressive JPEG images, 512
Projecting cap option, 358
Proof Colors command, 638–640
Proof Setup submenu, 638–640
Proof source spaces, 640
proofs and proofing. *See also* color management
  optimized subsampling and, 662–664
  soft-proofing, 638–640
  using color printers, 630
Proportional Lining numeral formatting, 274
Proportional Oldstyle numeral formatting, 274
proportional resizing or scaling, 23, 579. 110
proxies and proxy images. *See also* preview images
  center of rotation, 23
  displaying imported graphics, 477
  importing EPS graphics, 481
  layers and, 138
  mapping images to frames, 502–503
  on-screen low-resolution images, 56
  printing preview images, 664
  Reference Point proxies, 444
  selected objects and, 115, 116
  Selection Proxy, 138
  Transform and Control panels, 576, 577, 580, 581
Proxy setting, 664
PS files (PostScript files), 647
PSD files. *See* Photoshop graphics
psychocybernetic illusions, 120
publications
  adding pages, 82–84
  alternate layouts, 111–113

P

book features, 546, 548–549
chapter numbering, 553–554
CMYK settings, 639
conditional text, 223
converting other files to, 74–75
copying
  layers from other files, 140–141
  master pages from other files, 97
  stroke styles from other files, 365, 366
  styles from other files, 331–332
  text into files, 148
creating, 70–73
defaults, 62, 70–73
displaying information about, 27–28
docked display, 39
Document Fonts folder, 691
document grid, 47–48, 121, 130–131
document spaces (color management), 636–637, 640
exporting. *See* exporting
file extensions, 76, 178
flattener presets, 683–684
fonts, 691
imagesetting, preparing for, 686–687
indexing, 561–574
ink list, 605, 661
intent settings, 70
layers. *See* layers
layout. *See* page layouts
limiting searches to, 228
liquid page rules, 106–110
metadata in, 503–505
multiple page sizes in, 87–89
multiple windows, 7–9
opening, 73–75
opening in tabs, 38
packaging for printing, 682, 690–691
passwords for, 527–528
preferences, 35–36
preflight testing, 687–690
presets, 72–73
printing. *See* printing
rearranging pages, 84–86
recovery data and, 59–60, 77
saving, 75–77
setting up, 77–78, 82–87
tagging for accessibility, 530–531
templates, 73–74, 76
XML features. *See* XML and structured documents
publish date metadata, 753
Publisher field, 754
publisher information in eBooks, 754
pulling of hair, QuarkXPress users, and character styles, 319
punctuation
  finding/replacing with GREP, 239
  hanging punctuation, 333
  in index entries, 574
  removing in text variables, 178
  shortcuts, 170
Punk effect, 699
purifying waters of Lake Minnetonka, 75
purple highlights, substituted glyphs, 44
Python scripts, 697

Q

quad left and quad right, 278
Quality option, 512
QuarkXPress files, 31, 74–75, 95, 318
question marks (?), 485
Quick Apply feature, 331, 460–463
Quite Imposing, 671
quotation marks (")
  double quotes option, 50
  entering, 170
  typesetters', 39–40, 197, 200, 201

R

radial gradients, 367–368
radio buttons (forms), 725, 727
rags, 300, 303–304
Rainbow path text option, 457
Range field (PDF export), 518
range kerning. *See* tracking (spacing)
Ranges field, 649–650
raster images. *See* bitmap graphics
Raster Images slider, 56
Raster/Vector Balance slider, 681–682
Rasterize Pages option, 744
Rasterize the PostScript option, 481
rasterizing
  bitmap graphics, 666
  graphics, 750
  graphics for SWF files, 744
  objects for HTML, 756, 757
  preview images, 481
  previewing flattening, 684–685
  vectors, 678, 681–682, 683, 748
Re-Center page rule, 106–107, 112
Read Embedded OPI Image Links option, 480–481, 667
Read Only fields, 726
reader's spreads, 518, 651, 671
Real World Color Management, 628
Real World Photoshop, 476, 628
Real World Scanning and Halftones, 476
really bad justification decisions, 45
reapplying master pages, 103
rearranging pages, 84–86
Reassign To On Page Click command, 737
Reassign To On Page Load command, 737
Recompose All Stories When Modified setting, 51
recomposition, 51, 176, 183, 691
records in data merge, 536–537
recovering unsaved files, 59–60, 77
Rectangle Frame tool, 17, 18
rectangles and Rectangle tool
  converting objects to, 353–354
  drawing, 17, 22, 336–337
  not exported to EPUB, 750
  rounding corners, 354–355, 356
  shortcuts, 18
recto pages, 71, 553
red circle with question mark icon, 485
red dots in tables, 398
red plus sign (+), 156
red stop-sign icon, 549, 550
Redefine Scaling as 100% option, 582
Redefine Style command, 325, 426–427
redheads, fear of, 100

redrawing screen display, 39, 55, 393
Reference Point proxies, 444
reflecting objects, 591
reflection angles, 591
reflow
  adding pages automatically, 113
  alternate layouts and, 111
  eBook layouts and, 745
  HTML5 pagination options, 114
  hyphenation, 51, 691
  preventing, 691
  Smart Text Reflow, 41, 113
  text variables and, 176, 183
refreshing flattener previews, 684
RegexBuddy tool, 241
registration marks, 656
Registration Marks option, 656
regular expressions. *See* GREP
Relative Colorimetric setting, 635
relative leading (QuarkXPress), 254
relative positioning, 584
Relative to Page option, 754
Relative to Spine option, 444
Release command, 441
Release Compound Path command, 433
Release State To Object command, 729
Relink dialog box, 487
Relink to Folder command, 488
relinking
  default folders, 492
  to different file types, 488–489
  to missing files, 492
  to multiple instances, 488
  to new files, 487–488
  preserving size/scale options, 61
  relink folders, 492
remote printing. *See* imagesetters and service providers
Remove All Local Overrides command, 102
Remove Forced Line Breaks option, 752
Remove Notes from Story command, 212
Remove Selected Local Overrides command, 102
Remove Styles and Formatting from Text and Tables option, 197
Remove Text Formatting option, 202
Remove Text Style Conflicts Using option, 202
Removed Words list, 216
removing. *See also* deleting
  bullets or numbers, 314
  character styles, 323, 324
  character styles from text, 319
  Content Conveyor objects, 495
  documents from books, 547–548
  effects, 388
  formatting, 197, 202, 323, 324
  frame-fitting options, 502
  kerning, 258
  line breaks, 494
  object styles, 453
  objects for eBook export, 747
  optical margin adjustments, 334
  overrides. *See* clearing overrides
  paragraph styles from text, 324
  strokes from paths, 362
  styles, 197
  table formatting, 197
  text change tracking, 53
  text formatting, 197, 202
  text style conflicts, 202
  tracking, 258
  transparency, 388
  unplaced graphics from cursor, 471
renaming master pages, 96
rendering images, 55–58, 480
rendering intents, 480, 635–636
renditions for devices, 764–765
renumbering pages, 546, 548, 549, 552–553
reordering
  pages, 84–86
  stacked objects, 131–133
  swatches, 618
repaginating books, 546, 548, 549, 552–553
repeated words, spellchecking, 51
repeating elements
  nested styles, 295
  page elements, 94–95
repeating transformations, 593–596
repeating values, mixed ink groups, 616
repetitive motion injuries, 701
Replace Document dialog box, 548, 550
Replace Existing Index option, 572
Replace Existing Table of Contents option, 559
Replace Selected Items option, 195
replacing. *See also* finding and replacing
  documents, 547–548, 550
  existing indexes, 572
  existing tables of content, 559
  FindChange support scripts, 699
  fonts, 275–276
  FPO images, 488
  glyphs, 242–245
  keyboard shortcuts, 30
  master pages, 96
  placed items, 471
  saving find/replace queries, 244
  selected items, 195
  text, 230–231, 236–242
  text variables, 182
reports, Preflight, 690
Required option (forms), 726
resampling images, 521–522
Reset All Warning Dialogs button, 37
Reset Menus command, 33
Reset to Base button, 329
resetting. *See* restoring
resident fonts, 664
resizing
  alternate page layouts, 110–114
  animated objects, 738
  characters, 36–37, 262
  clipping paths, 510
  columns in tables, 406–407
  device renditions and, 765
  eBook exports and, 754
  frame fitting features, 500, 501–503
  frames to fit text, 156–157
  Free Transform tool and, 24, 587
  Gap tool and, 600
  glyphs, 302–303
  graphics after layout adjustments, 105
  HTML exports and, 757, 759
  icons, 79
  imported graphics, 499–500
  keyboard shortcuts for, 588
  layout adjustment settings, 103–105

R

linked objects, 494
liquid page rules, 106–110
movie frames, 730, 733
multiple objects, 579
objects, 36–37
Page panel areas, 80
pages, 79
panel percentages and, 582, 587
panels, 12
pasteboard, 49
preserving image size during relinking, 61, 492
printer output, 653
proportional scaling, 23
resampling images, 521–522
rows in tables, 406–407
Scale dialog box and, 587–588
Scale tool and, 23, 586
Selection tool and, 587
strokes, 588
SWF Preview panel, 740
tables, 404–409
text frames, 36–37, 156–157, 167–169, 579, 580
text in frames, 253–254
Transform/Control panel options, 587
triggering link alerts, 494
resolution
clipping paths and, 510
display settings, 56
displaying in Info panel, 28
eBook export options, 754
exported EPS files, 514–515
flattener settings, 667–668, 681–683
gradients, 682–683
graphics, 475–476
High Resolution flattening, 681, 682
interactive document settings, 743
JPEG files, 512
monochrome images, 521, 522
optimized subsampling and, 662–664
optimizing printed images, 662–664
resampling images, 521–522
Resolution pop-up menu, 743
Restart Numbering Every option, 220
restoring
default menus, 33
losing unsaved changes, 77
multi-state objects, 729
original defaults, 62
resetting hyperlinks, 717
resetting zero point, 7
reverting to saved versions, 549
warning dialog boxes, 37
resulting colors in transparency, 374
resuming animation, 721
retaining formatting when pasting, 61
retina display, 762
retracting control handles, 343
return characters. *See* carriage returns
Reveal features, 490
Reveal in Bridge option, 491
Reveal in Explorer command, 275, 491
Reveal in Finder command, 275, 491
Reverse on Roll Off event, 734
Reverse Order option, 649
Reverse Path button or command, 338, 361, 736
reversing
animation, 721
arrowheads, 361
path direction, 338, 354, 361, 736
printed page order, 649
Revert to Saved function, 549
reverting
to original defaults, 62
to saved versions in books, 549
RGB color model. *See also* color management; color models
choosing models, 605–606
color management, 629, 631, 632
composites or separations, 657–658
converting, 513, 523–524
document intent settings, 70
EPS files and, 513, 644
imported images and, 629
JPEG files and, 512
management policies, 633–634
PDF files and, 523–524, 643
presets, 631
RGB working space, 632–633, 636
switching to, 621
rich blacks, 58–59
rich media. *See* interactive features
rich text format. *See* RTF files
right alignment
paragraphs, 278
tabs, 282–283, 286
right-click menus (context menus), 29
right double quotes (”), 39–40, 50, 197
right-hand pages, 553
Right Indent field, 279
right justified paragraphs, 278
right single quotes (’), 39–40, 50
right-to-left language composition, 298
RIPs, 658, 659, 678, 680
R’lyeh (elder evil space god), 308
The Rocket, 249
Role Map (Acrobat), 531
roll-fed printers, 652
rollovers, 722–723, 734
roman numerals, 90, 92, 310
Rotate 90 degrees buttons, 582
Rotate dialog box, 591
Rotate Spreads feature, 89–90
Rotate tool, 17, 18, 23, 589
rotating devices, 110, 114, 762
rotating objects
animated objects, 738
audio or video frames, 733
center of rotation, 23
Free Transform tool, 589
multiple objects, 591
preserving angles for HTML, 757, 759
preserving angles in eBooks, 754
retaining angles after relinking, 492
Rotate dialog box, 591
Rotate tool, 18, 23, 589
rotation angles, 588–589
Selection tool, 589
spreads, 89–90
table cells, 411, 412
Transform and Control panels, 590
rotation angles, 588–589
Roth, Steve, 476
Round Cap option, 358
Round Join option, 358
rounded corners, 22, 354–355, 356, 358

Rounded feather corner option, 385
rows (grids), 596–597
rows (tables)
adding, 407–409
alternating fills or strokes, 421–422
colors, 421–422
defined, 395
deleting, 409–410
distributing height evenly, 405
eBook export options, 753
fills or strokes, 421–422
header/footer rows, 402–404
resizing, 406–407
selecting rows, 401
table styles and, 426
RTF files
exporting, 203, 331
exporting as HTML, 760
exporting style groups and, 331
importing, 194, 196–199
retaining formatting when pasting, 61
styles in, 332
RTF Import Options dialog box, 196–199
rtmp://-style URLs, 731
Rule Above option, 222
ruler guides, 3
copying, 128
creating, 119, 123–124, 125
deleting, 128
editing, 124–125
exporting in PDF files, 520
layout adjustment settings, 105
liquid guides, 107–108, 119
locking and unlocking, 127–128
moving between layers, 126
positioning around objects, 124
selecting, 124
Ruler Guides dialog box, 48, 126
rulers, 3, 6, 45–46. *See also* ruler guides
rules
footnotes and, 222
liquid page rules, 106–110
paragraph. *See* paragraph rules
strokes. *See* strokes
run-in formatting
indexes, 572
table of contents, 558
run-in headings, 290–297, 316
Run-in option, 558
Run Length encoding, 523
Running Header (Character Style) variable, 176, 178, 186
Running Header (Paragraph Style) variable, 176, 178, 186
running headers or footers. *See* headers or footers
runts, defined, 304

S

saddle-stitched imposition, 672, 673
Sample Buttons and Forms option, 724
samples, color swatch books, 629–630
sampling colors, 24, 25
Samsung Galaxy Tab, 760–766
sans serif type, 257
Satin effect, 383
"satisfaction guaranteed or your money back" apps, 764
Saturation blending mode, 377
Saturation rendering intent, 635
Save As command, 75
Save command, 75
Save File As dialog box, 75
Save for Web & Devices option, 764
Save Query button, 244
Save Swatches for Exchange command, 611
saved data, 77
saving
color swatches, 611
converted books, 548
converted InDesign files, 74
document presets, 72
file recovery features, 59–60
files for prior InDesign versions, 76–77
find and replace queries, 244
glyph sets, 173
motion presets, 738
panels as workspaces, 34–35
Preflight reports, 690
preview images, 60
publications, 75–77
stroke styles, 365–366
unsaved document indicator, 4
workspaces, 35
Scale dialog box, 587–588
Scale page rule, 106–107, 112
Scale setting (printing), 653
Scale to Fit option, 653
Scale tool, 17, 18, 23, 499–500, 586
scaling. *See* resizing
scanned images, 475–476
scanners, 627–628
Scissors tool, 17, 18, 26, 346
Scitext RIPs, 680
scope of index entries, 562–565
Scope options (text variables), 178
Screen blending mode, 375–376
screen display
color management, 627–628
distrust of, 584
drawing/redrawing display, 55, 393
graphic display settings, 477–478
matching black ink on screen, 58–59
monitor profiles, 631
preferences, 55–58
redrawing, 39
"soft proofing," 629
tablets and readers. *See* devices (mobile, reading, tablet)
screen frequency, 476, 521, 659–661
Screen Mode pop-up menu, 4
scribes, lamentations of, 645
Script Debugger, 696
script editors, 695–697
Script Label panel, 702–703
scripting examples
AddGuides, 124, 698
AddPoints, 698
AdjustLayout, 698
AlignToPage, 698
AnimationEncyclopedia, 698
BreakFrames, 698
CornerEffects, 698
CreateCharacterStyle, 318, 698
CropMarks, 699
CutContents, 704–706
Draw NINAs, 706–707
ExportAllStories, 699
FindChange support, 699
ImageCatalog, 699
MakeGrid, 699
Mystic Rose, 708
Neon, 699
PathEffects, 699
PlaceMultipagePDF, 699
removing style overrides, 704

SelectObjects, 699–700
SortParagraphs, 700
SplitStory, 700
TabUtilities, 700
Web site downloads, 704
working through, 703–704
Scripting Guide and Tutorial, 697, 703
scripts and scripting. *See also* scripting examples
aliases or shortcuts for, 701
AppleScript examples, 704
benefits of, 700–701
deleting scripts, 701
eBook support, 755
fear of, 694
InDesign scripting forum, 697
InDesign scripting philosophy, 700
JavaScript scripting, 704
keyboard shortcuts, 702
Macintosh systems, 695–696
order in Scripts panel, 702
overview, 694
in Quick Apply list, 462, 463
removing style overrides, 704
running scripts, 694
script editors, 695–697
Script Label panel, 702–703
Scripts panel, 11, 694, 701–702
Scripts Panel folder, 694
testing scripts, 706
user interfaces, 707–708
Visual Basic scripting, 696–697
Web site downloads, xi, 704
Windows scripting systems, 696–697
working through, 703–704
Scripts panel, 11, 694, 701–702
Scripts Panel folder, 694
scroll wheels, 67
Scrollable option, 727
scrolling and scroll bars, 3, 26
basic techniques, 5, 65–67
as enemy of productivity, 5
gestures, 38
long form fields, 727
through publications, 62
Search field, 4
Search for Missing Links command, 491
Search pop-up menu, 228
searching. *See* finding
Seattle Mariners, 544
second-level index entries, 568
seconds, in text variables, 179
Section 508-compliant files, 519, 530
section headings in indexes, 572–573
section markers, 91, 92, 93–94
Section Prefix field, 92
sections
absolute numbers, 650
creating, 90–92
page numbering, 36, 552, 650
page ranges, index entries, 564
section markers, 91, 92, 93–94
section prefixes, 90, 92
specifying ranges to print, 650
text in markers, 93–94
security, 527–528
Security pane (Export PDF dialog box), 527–528
See and See also cross-references, 566–568
Select All command, 116
Select Container button, 120
Select Content button, 120
Selected by Default option, 727
selecting. *See also* selecting objects; selecting text
all items, 116
multiple check boxes in forms, 727
objects. *See* selecting objects
pages or spreads, 81–82
ruler guides, 127
Selection Proxy, 138
text. *See* selecting text
selecting objects
all objects, 116
anchored objects, 441
behind other objects, 117
clipping paths, 508–509
before deleting, 144
deselecting, 116–117
Direct Selection tool, 17, 20, 118–119, 142
frames and contents, 498–499
grouping selected objects, 142–143
guides, 124
for HTML export, 758
inline frames, 436, 441
inside groups, 118–119, 142
keyboard shortcuts, 117–118
on layers, 138, 139
locked objects, 36
within other objects, 120
overlapping objects, 117
overview, 115–119
points, 344
selection handles, 115, 138
Selection Proxy, 138
selection rectangles, 115
Selection tool, 19–20
SelectObjects script, 699–700
subselecting, 20
subselecting objects, 142
table elements, 399–400
zooming into selected objects, 62–65
selecting text
cursor movement shortcuts, 204–205
before formatting, 250–251, 255, 277
with mouse, 204
replacing with importing text, 195
table elements, 399–400
triple-clicking Type tool, 40
selection colors of layers, 136, 138
selection handles, 115, 138
Selection Proxy, 138
Selection tool
overview, 17, 19–20, 115–116
resizing objects, 587
rotating objects, 589
scaling graphics, 500
selecting frames and contents, 498–499
selecting text for formatting, 250
shortcuts, 18
subselecting, 120
SelectObjects script, 699–700
semi-automatic text flow, 68, 166, 168
Send Backward command, 133
Send Data pop-up menu, 662–664
Send Data setting (EPS options), 514–515
Send to Back command, 132
Senefelder, Alois, 645
SEP files (device-independent PostScript files), 647
separating panels, 13
separations. *See* color separations
Separations option, 658
Separations panel, 675–677

separator bars in Pages panel, 79
Separator option, 220
separators for index entries, 573–574
sequential page numbering, 36
servers
  collecting form data, 722
  nervousness and, 550
  paths to HTML images, 759
service providers. *See* imagesetters and service providers
Set Dictionary To setting, 200
Set Tab Order dialog box, 743
sets (Content Conveyor), 496, 497
Setup pane (Print dialog box), 652–655
Shadow Honors Other Effects checkbox, 383
shadows. *See also* drop shadows
  Inner Shadow effect, 383
  shadow cursors, 6
Shape pop-up menu, 386
shapes
  converting to text frames, 148
  corner options, 354–355, 356
  drawing basic shapes, 336–337
  EPUB and HTML export, 750
  feathering, 386
  fills. *See* fills
  gradients. *See* gradients and gradient fills
  transparency. *See* transparency
Share My Screen option, 741
shared destinations for hyperlinks, 714
Sharp feather corner option, 385
Shear dialog box, 593
Shear tool, 17, 18, 24, 592–593
shearing
  audio or video frames, 733
  as not just for wool, 592
  objects, 24
  Shear tool, 17
  skewing characters, 263, 264
  skewing path text, 457
Sheet setting, 201
Shoggoth (elder evil space god), 308
short words, hyphenation and, 299
shortcuts
  applying colors, 607
  baseline shift settings, 263
  captioning figures, 463
  Color panel, 620–621
  contact sheets, 472
  context menus, 29
  creating, 29–32
  cursor, moving through text, 204–205
  Fill selector, 607
  filtering Quick Apply list, 463
  finding or replacing text, 231
  focus in panels, 9–10
  font styles, 253
  Gap tool, 600
  increasing/decreasing fonts, 253–254
  kerning, 259
  keyboard shortcuts, 1–2, 29–32
  leading, 256
  modifier keys, 204–205
  most frequently-used shortcut, 32
  object styles, 451
  page navigation, 67
  point size adjustments, 253–254
  Presentation Mode, 741
  previewing separations, 676
  problems when entering text, 2
  Quick Apply feature, 460–463
  saving sets of, 30
  scaling objects, 588
  scripts, 702
  selecting objects, 117–118
  selecting text, 204–205
  Stroke selector, 607
  tables, 412–413
  Tools panel, 18
  type styles, 252
  View menu shortcuts, 63
  workspaces, 35
Show All Layers command, 136
Show Content Offset option, 583
Show Guides command, 121, 139
Show Hidden Characters command, 176, 205
Show/Hide Buttons and Forms actions, 720–721
Show/Hide Notes button, 211, 212
Show Import Options option, 195, 471
Show Layer icon or option, 138, 505–506
Show List of Problem Tags Before Place option, 202
Show Master Page Overlay option, 89
Show menu, Glyphs panel, 172
Show Prefix/Suffix In option, 220
Show Subset button, 28
Show Tagged Frames command, 541
Show Text Snippets command, 541
Show Text Threads command, 148, 161
Show Thumbnails command, 80
Show Thumbnails on Place option, 37
Show Transformation Values option, 38
Show Vertically command, 80
showing. *See* displaying
Shrink animation, 734
shrinking
  frames to fit text, 157
  panels to title bars, 10
  text frames, 167–169
shuffling pages, 84–86
side head self-experimentation, 448
signature fields (forms), 725
Signature Size pop-up menu, 672
signatures, digital, 725
signing in to DPS, 762
Simulate Overprint option, 512, 524, 658, 662
Simulate Paper Color option, 640
single-cell tables, 411
Single Edition license (DPS), 760
single-issue viewer apps, 762
Single Line Composer, 298
single-line World Ready composers, 298
single quotes (‘), 39–40, 50
Single Word Justification option, 303
Size and Shape option, 494
Size/Leading field, 46–47
size of panel rows, 15
size of type. *See* point size of type
SJIS encoding, 247
Skew path text option, 457
skewing. *See* shearing
skins, controller, 732
Skip button, 214
Skip by Leading option, 45
slanting type. *See* italic text; shearing
slashed zero characters, 272
slide shows, 721, 727–729, 735, 740–741
Slug options, 70

S

slugs, 70, 72
small caps, 42, 261, 264–265, 272
Small Caps text effect, 42
small panel rows, 15, 135
small screens. *See* devices (mobile, reading, tablet)
smart cursors, 38, 128, 129
Smart Dimensions, 50, 129
Smart Guides, 49, 50, 119, 128–130
Smart Spacing, 129
Smart Text Reflow option, 41, 113
Smart transformations, 129
Smooth point operation, 354
Smooth tool, 17, 18, 22, 349–350
smoothing paths, 17, 22, 349–350
snakes, fear of, 100
Snap to Document Grid command, 131
Snap to Guides command, 120–121, 131
Snap to Zone setting, 49
snapping objects
  disabling, 121
  to grid or guides, 120–121, 131
  guides to objects, 124
  layout adjustments and, 105
  into position, 13, 49
  Smart Guides, 128–130
  snap zones, 49, 105
Snippet Import options, 60
snippets, 60, 532–533, 541, 765
sobbing, uncontrollable, over resizing text frames, 110
social gatherings, avoiding EPS at, 473
Soft Light blending mode, 376
"soft proofing," 629, 638–640
softening
  drop shadows, 381–383
  feathering, 384–387
solid leading, 257
Sony Reader, 745
Sort Entries in Alphabetical Order option, 557
Sort Items option, 727
sorting
  bookmarks in panel, 718
  cell or table styles, 427
  form list/combo box options, 727
  index sort order, 562, 570
  paragraph style names, 316
  paragraphs, 700
  tables of content, 557
SortParagraphs script, 700
Sound action, 721
sound files. *See* audio files
source color management profiles, 640
source cross references, 191
source files (DPS), 690, 761, 762
source pages for alternate layouts, 112
sources for accessibility tags, 530–531
Space Between Footnotes option, 221
Space Between Pages option, 673–674
spacebands, 302
spaces. *See also* spacing; tabs and tab stops
  entering, 170
  GREP removal, 240–241, 243
  importing text files containing, 200
  inserting special characters, 169, 170
  removing underlining, 266–267
  showing hidden characters, 205
spaceship Nadesico, 378
spacing. *See also* spaces
  before and after paragraphs, 154–155, 158, 286
  around above-line objects, 442
  classes in HTML and EPUB, 749
  between footnotes, 221
  Gap tool, 20, 599–601
  grids of objects, 596–597
  HTML exports and, 756
  images in eBooks, 754
  inset spacing, text frames, 152
  kerning, 258–260
  leading adjustments and, 286
  letter spacing, 301–303
  multi-line composer, 297–299
  multiple columns and, 158
  between objects, 598–601
  between pages, 673–674
  Smart Spacing, 129
  spacebands, 302
  spaces between words, 41
  in Story Editor, 54
  word spacing, 260, 301–303
Span Columns dialog box, 145
spanned column headlines, 157–159
special characters. *See also* glyphs
  Align To Character tab stops, 283
  discretionary hyphens, 301
  displaying, 205
  entering symbols, 170
  escaping, 239
  finding and replacing, 229–230
  GREP methods and, 236–242
  hanging punctuation, 333
  hidden characters, 205, 229–230, 236–242
  inserting, 169–173
  list of, 170
  mixing or matching in glyph sets, 173
  nested style metacharacters, 292
  punctuation in index entries, 574
  shortcuts for entering, 170
  sorting index entries with, 570
  symbol fonts, 253
  wildcard metacharacters, 229–230
Specify Formatting to Find button, 232
spectrum, color, 604
speed
  animation, 734, 738
  applications. *See* performance and speed
spellchecking. *See* checking spelling
Spelling Preferences dialog box, 51–52
spiders, fear of, 100
Spinal Tap's Nigel, 300
Spine zero point option, 45
spines for book covers, 87
Spirograph drawings, 706–707
Split Cell Horizontally/Vertically commands, 411
Split Document option, 751, 754
split footnotes, 222, 223
SplitStory script, 700
splitting
  breaking pages in eBooks, 751, 754
  columns under headlines, 157–159
  footnotes, 222, 223
  paths, 26, 348
  points, 26
  stories, 700
  table cells, 411

spot colors. *See also* process colors
aliasing, 625, 626
choosing color model, 605–606
converting to process, 617, 625–626
creating, 605–606, 609
halftone screen settings, 660
in InDesign publications, 605–606
Ink Manager, 625
inks, turning on or off, 661
mixed ink swatches, 614–617
printed color samples, 629–630
printing, 604
transparency issues, 680
Spread zero point option, 45
spreading drop shadows, 381–383
spreads (page spreads). *See also* master spreads and pages
alternate layouts, 110–114
arranging pages, 84–86
duplicating, 83
exporting in PDF files, 518
flattener presets, applying, 683–684
hiding master items, 101
island spreads, 85
labels of, 82
layout options, 77–78, 103–105
liquid page rules, 106–110
pasteboard not shared between, 4
PDF export options, 740–741
printing on single sheet, 651
reader's or printer's, 518, 651
rotating, 89–90
ruler guides, creating, 123–124, 125
selecting, 81–82
shuffling pages, 86
Smart Text Reflow option and, 41
zero point, 45
Spreads option, 518, 651
spreadsheets, 60, 200–201, 397, 492
spring-loaded tools, 19
Spry data sets, 757
square brackets ([ ]), 85, 271
squares, 22, 336, 354–355, 356
sRGB profile, 632, 641, 643
stacking order of objects
changing layer stacking order, 140
copying objects on multiple layers, 140
guides and, 49
master page items, 141
moving guides between layers, 126
multi-state objects, 727
pasting layers between files, 140–141
path operations and, 352
reordering stacks or objects, 131–133
selecting overlapping objects, 117
sending objects forward or backward, 131–133
text wrap and, 45, 133, 139
stacking panels, 13–14
Stair Step path text option, 457, 458
StandardSoundPoster.jpg file, 733
Star Inset field, 23
star targets, 670
Start At option, 219
Start field (grid), 47
Start Indicator (text on paths), 454–455
Start Paragraph pop-up menu, 306
starting list numbers, 309
starting page numbers, 71, 91
states
buttons, 722–723
multi-state objects, 727–729
static articles, 762
static captions, 463, 465–466
stationery, 73, 76, 87
status of stories, 486
Step and Repeat dialog box, 128, 585
stitching, avoiding, 683
stone measurement units, 45
Stop Color pop-up menu, 612
Stop on Page Turn option, 732
stopping animation, 721
stops. *See* tabs and tab stops
stories. *See also* linked text frames
adding new text frames, 164, 165
Adobe InCopy and, 212–213
alternate layouts, 110–114
copying and pasting linked frames, 163–164, 165
deleting linked frames, 163
exporting, 203, 699
exporting to EPUB, 753–755
exporting to HTML, 756, 757
finding text in locked stories, 227
flowing text in frames, 159–164, 166–167
InCopy stories, 486
limiting searches to, 228
linking in alternate layouts, 113
liquid page rules, 106–110
locked stories, 227
merging, 160–161, 162
page ranges for index entries, 564
selecting, 40
Smart Text Reflow option and, 41
status, 486
Story Editor, 54–55, 206–209
Story panel, 11
story windows, 54–55, 206–209
tables in, 395–396
threading, 159–164
Story Editor
drag and drop editing in, 41
notes in, 52, 210–212
overview, 206–209
preferences, 54–55, 208–209, 210
tracking changes, 53–54, 209–210, 211
vertical depth display, 209
Story Editor Preferences dialog box, 54–55, 208–209, 210
Story panel, 11. *See also* stories
story windows, 54–55, 206–209
straddle heads, 157–159
straight lines, 22
straight quotes (“), 197
stream crossings, obstructed by battling ghosts, 157
streaming audio, 731
streaming video, 731
strikethrough formatting, 268–269
Strikethrough Options dialog box, 268
strings
defined, 226
formatting attributes, 232–234
GREP find and replace, 236–242
striped strokes, 360, 361, 362, 363–366
Stroke button, 18
Stroke option, 46

S

Stroke panel, 11, 356–366. *See also* strokes
Stroke selector, 18, 26–27, 607
Stroke Styles dialog box, 363–366
strokes
  0 setline-width strokes, 357
  after path operations, 352
  alignment, 357–358
  alternating, in tables, 421–422
  applying effects to, 380
  applying to table cells, 413–416
  arrowheads and tailfeathers, 360, 361
  cap options, 358
  cell styles, 424
  colors, 607
  copying with Eyedropper tool, 24, 25
  dashed lines, 359
  displaying information about, 28
  editing, 362
  finding/replacing in objects, 144–146
  gap color and tint, 360, 361
  join options, 358
  layered strokes, 359–360
  line weight, 356–357
  measurement units, 46
  miter limit setting, 358–359
  overprinting, 360
  overview, 355–356
  paragraph rules, 392
  patterns, 363–366
  removing from paths, 362
  scaling, 23, 588
  striped strokes, 360, 361, 363–366
  Stroke button, 18
  Stroke panel, 11, 356–366
  Stroke selector, 26–27, 607
  stroke styles, 363–366
  stroking characters, 276, 277
  swapping stroke and fill colors, 607
  table styles, 426
  transparency flattener and, 683
Structure view, 541, 542. *See also* XML and structured documents
stupid things to do
  with carriage returns, 286
  pushing graphics off pasteboard, 501
  really bad justification decisions, 45
  with tabs, 282
  talk-radio-style advice on tiling, 655
  with text variables, 180
  unnamed colors, 606
  "With Power Comes Responsibility" speeches, 373, 379
style groups, 113, 329–331, 428
Style Mapping dialog box, 199
Style option (text variables), 178
Style pop-up menu (text variables), 186
Style Settings list, 451
style source documents, 551
styles. *See also* formatting
  alternate layouts and, 111, 113
  cell styles, 423–424
  character. *See* character styles
  compared to formatting, 315, 316
  compared to presets, 73
  copying between files, 331–332
  deleting text with specified styles, 236
  in eBook CSS files, 755
  eBook tables of contents, 751
  in external CSS files, 760
  finding/changing by style, 232–234
  flattener presets, 681–683
  floppy disk icons, 332
  groups in alternate layouts, 113
  HTML export, 756
  hyperlinks, 715
  in imported text, 197, 199, 202
  importing from other files, 331–332
  index page ranges, 562, 564
  index style settings, 573
  links between text and style definitions, 316, 319, 453
  mapping
    Content Conveyor, 496, 497–498
    eBook output, 748–749
    imported files, 199
    PDF tags, 531
    XML tags, 541
  nested, 290–297
  object styles. *See* object styles
  paragraph. *See* paragraph styles
  parent-child relationships, 328–329, 451
  print presets, 668–670
  Quick Apply feature, 460–463
  saving in libraries, 332
  stroke styles, 363–366
  style groups, 329–331, 428
  style source documents, 551
  synchronizing book files, 551–552
  table styles, 423–428
  tables of contents, 559–560, 751
  tagged PDFs, 531
  unused, 198
stylistic sets, 273
sub-bookmarks, 718
sub-columns, 158
sub-lists, 311
subexpressions (GREP), 237–240
"Submit" buttons, 726
Submit Form action, 722
Submit Form button, 726
submitting PDF forms, 722, 726
subsampling images, 521
subscript formatting, 42, 263, 269–270
subscriptions to Creative Cloud, 760
subselections, 118–119, 120, 142
Subset dialog box, 28
Subset Fonts Below option, 525
Subset Fonts option, 36
subsets of fonts, 36, 514, 525–526
subsets of libraries, 28
substituted fonts, 43, 253
substituted glyphs, 242
Subtract path operation, 352, 353
subtracting pieces of merged shapes, 352, 353
Suggested Corrections list, 214
summary of PDF export options, 528
Summary pane (Print dialog box), 668
Super Autoflow icon, 166, 167, 168
superscript formatting, 42, 263, 269–270
Suppress Page Range option, 565
Swap Fill and Stroke icon, 18, 26
swapping. *See* switching
Swash feature, OpenType fonts, 272
swashes, 271
swatch books, 629–630

swatch libraries, 606, 610
Swatch Options dialog box, 617
swatches
  adding colors
    new unnamed colors, 609
    from other files, 610–611
    from swatch libraries, 610
  applying colors
    to objects, 622–623
    to strokes or fills, 366–367, 607
  Color Picker, 621–622
  color swatch books, 629–630
  creating, 607–611
  deleting from files, 532, 618–619
  duplicating, 620
  editing, 617
  gradients, 369, 370, 611–614
  libraries, 606, 610
  merging, 619–620
  mixed ink groups, 615–617
  mixed ink swatches, 614–617
  overview, 604–605
  reordering in panel, 618
  Swatches panel, 11, 607–611
  tint swatches, 611, 612
  using in other documents, 610–611
Swatches panel, 11, 607–611
SWF files
  animation, 733–734
  audio and video in, 729–733
  buttons in, 719–724
  exporting, 743–744
  exporting animation for PDF, 738
  exporting to HTML, 757
  hyperlinks to, 714
  importing, 729
  interactive features in, 710, 711
  movie options, 731
  page transition effects, 739
  Presentation Mode, 740–741
  previewing, 740–741
  transparency in, 744
SWF Preview panel, 11, 740
switching
  colors in mixed inks, 617
  fill and stroke colors in panel, 18, 26
  font stylistic sets, 273
  to Hand tool, 65–66
  between ruler and liquid guides, 108
  to Selection tool, 19
  Story Editor windows, 208
  tools temporarily, 18, 19
SWOP profiles and inks, 631, 633, 641
symbol fonts, 253
symbols. *See* special characters
symmetrical point operations, 354
Synchronize feature, 546, 551–552
synchronizing
  Adobe Suite applications, 630
  booked documents, 546, 551–552
system failures, 77

T

T-squares, ancient page layout and, 17
T1 symbol in font names, 253
tab characters. *See* tabs and tab stops
tab-delimited text, 201, 533
tab key, 719, 722
tab order in PDF files, 722, 743
tabbed panels, 13–14
tabbed publication display, 38
table cells. *See* cells in tables
table numbers, 311
Table of Contents dialog box, 555–560. *See also* tables of contents
Table of Contents Text option, 197
Table option, 201
Table Options dialog box, 403, 413, 421–422
Table panel, 11
Table Styles panel, 427
tables
  adding columns or rows, 407–409
  borders of tables, 421
  boxes around paragraphs, 411, 412
  cells. *See* cells in tables
  columns. *See* columns in tables
  components of, 395
  Content Conveyor, 496, 497–498
  context menu options, 401
  Control panel options, 402
  converting tables and text, 197, 396, 398, 399
  copying from other programs, 397
  creating, 396–398
  cursors for table editing, 401
  deleting rows or columns, 409–410
  deleting tables, 409
  eBook export options, 753
  formatting, 197, 413–422
  graphics, placing in cells, 400, 402
  header and footer rows, 402–404
  HTML export options, 757
  importing
    Excel data, 201
    from other programs, 197, 397
    preserving/removing formatting, 197
    styles, 428
    Word tables, 197
  keyboard shortcuts, 412–413
  local formatting, 421
  mapping styles, 496, 497–498
  merging cells, 410–411
  numbering, 311
  options, 403, 421–422
  overriding styles, 427
  overview, 395–396
  resizing, 404–409
  rotating cells, 411, 412
  rows. *See* rows (tables)
  selecting elements, 401
  single-cell tables, 411
  splitting cells, 411
  style groups, 428
  styles, 423–428, 496, 497–498
  Table panel, 11
tables of contents. *See also* books
  alphabetizing entries, 557
  as bookmarks, 718
  bookmarks in PDFs, 519–520, 718
  building, 559
  characters before page number, 557
  creating, 555–557
  dummy text or tags in, 559
  eBook options, 751
  hyperlinking in PDF files, 520
  importing in Word/RTF files, 197
  including entire books, 557
  including hidden layers, 558–559

indenting entry levels, 558
non-printing frames, including, 559
options, 555–560
overview, 555
page number options, 557
paragraph numbers in, 559
run-in headings, 558
updating, 559
tablet devices. *See* devices (mobile, reading, tablet)
tabs and tab stops
automating tab setting, 700
in bulleted lists, 307
centered tab stops, 282–283
decimal tab stops, 283
defined, 281–282
editing tab stops, 284
entering in table cells, 400
hanging indents and, 280–281
history of, 281
left tab stops, 282–283
overview, 281–282
removing tab stops, 284
repeating tab stops, 284–285
right tab stops, 282–283, 286
rules for using, 282
setting tab stops, 283–286
tab characters
Align To Character tab stops, 283
defined, 281–282
displaying, 205
entering in table cells, 400
importing Excel files containing, 201
importing text files containing, 200
showing hidden characters, 205
tab leaders, 285–286
tab order in PDF files, 722, 743
in tables of contents, 557
Tabs panel, 11, 14, 280, 283
TabUtilities script, 700
types of tab stops, 282–283
Tabs panel, 11, 14, 280, 283–286. *See also* tabs and tab stops
Tabular Lining numeral formatting, 274
Tabular Oldstyle numerals, 274
TabUtilities script, 700
Tag field, 748
tagged PDF files, 518–519, 530, 742
Tagged PDF pane, 530
tagged text and documents. *See also* XML and structured documents
accessibility requirements, 530–531
exporting tagged text, 203
formatting text between tags, 239–240, 243
importing, 202
InDesign tagged text, 195, 244–248
mapping EPUB styles, 748
PageMaker tags, 247–248
tables of contents and, 559
tag contents, 246–247
tag structure, 247
tagged PDF files, 518–519, 530, 742
tagged text errors, listing, 202
uses for tagged text, 245–246
viewing in text editors, 246
Tagged Text Import Options dialog box, 202
Tagged Text.pdf file, 246
tagging paragraphs with styles, 316, 323–324
tags. *See* tagged text and documents; XML and structured documents
Tags panel, 541, 543. *See also* XML and structured documents
tailfeathers, 360, 361
talk-radio-style advice on tiling, 655
target color profiles, 640–641
target devices. *See* devices (mobile, reading, tablet)
Target Layer icon, 135, 137
target layers, 135, 137
target previews, 764
targeted dictionaries, 216
targeting pages, 81
tax season calculations, 17
TeacupSoftware, 533
technical-style numbering, 311
temperature of lighting, 629
templates
downloading from InDesignSecrets.com, 76
for merged data, 534–536
opening, 73–74
saving documents as, 76
temporary files, 59, 60
testing
button rollovers and states, 723
folio output, 764
scripts, 706
SWF Preview panel, 740
text. *See also* text files; text frames; text variables
Adobe InCopy and, 212–213
aligning. *See* aligning text
alternate layouts, 110–114
anchors for hyperlinks, 714
anti-aliasing setting, 57, 58
applying colors to, 622
applying effects to, 379, 380
attaching to paths. *See* path text
auto-sizing frames to fit, 156–157
baseline shift, 42, 47, 262–263, 269–270
block level <p> text, 748
blurring, 387–388
in buttons, 722
captions, 463–466
character formatting. *See* character formatting
character styles. *See* character styles
characters. *See* characters
compressing, 523
conditional text, 223–225
Content Conveyor, 493
converting
notes to text, 212
tables to text, 398, 399
text to notes, 212
text to outlines, 432–434, 683
text to tables, 396, 398
variable instances to text, 182, 183
copying into HTML editors, 760
copying on Clipboard, 61
cross references, 191–194
custom text in text variables, 178
deleting text with specified styles, 236
display preferences, 55–58
dummy text, 173–175
eBook navigation, 752
editing. *See* editing text
embedding graphics in. *See* inline frames
endnotes, 223
entering. *See* entering text

exporting
to eBooks, 747, 752
to Flash files, 745
to HTML, 757
overview, 203
finding and replacing. *See* finding and replacing
flowing in text frames, 164, 166–167
form fields, 725, 726
formatting attributes, 232–234
glyphs, 44, 171–173, 271, 302–303
GREP cleanup, 240–241, 243
highlight effect, 267–268
highlighting composition problems, 42–44, 304
as hyperlink destination, 716
importing. *See* importing text
indenting, 279–281, 558
insertion point, 169
kerning. *See* kerning
leading. *See* leading
linking stories in alternate layouts, 113
links to, 60
liquid page rules, 106–110
measurement units, 46
non-Latin, 42
outlines, 757
overset, 156–157
overview, 147–148
paragraph formatting. *See* paragraph formatting
pasting into publications, 61, 148, 194
path text, 454–460
pesky, 323
placing, 164, 166–167, 195–196
printing colors as black, 658–659
reflow. *See* reflow
removing formatting from, 202
replacing. *See* finding and replacing
selecting. *See* selecting text
size and scaling, 36–37, 46, 253–254
Smart Text Reflow option, 41
spacing. *See* spacing
Story Editor, 54, 206–209
superscript and subscript, 269–270
SWF file composition, 744
tables of contents. *See* tables of contents
text frames. *See* text frames
tracking changes, 53–54
transparency flattener and, 683
unplaced text. *See* overset text
variables. *See* text variables
word, line, or paragraph counts, 27
XML tags, 541, 543
text anchors
as hyperlink destinations, 714, 716
links in HTML, 757
Text As Black option, 658–659
Text Before and Text After options (captions), 463
Text Before and Text After options (text variables), 178
text blocks or boxes. *See* text frames
Text Display Options settings, 208
text editors, 246
text fields (forms), 725, 726
text files. *See also* Microsoft Word files; RTF files; tagged text and documents
creating links to, 492
dragging into publications, 148
formatting text in, 246
GREP cleanup, 240–241, 243
importing, 194–196, 199–200
InDesign Interchange (IDML) format, 74, 75, 532
InDesign Interchange (INX) format, 532
linked files, 203
PMD files, 671
snippets, 532–533, 541
XML files, 540–541
text flow. *See also* linked text frames
flowing text, 160–162, 166–167
icons, 166
primary text frames, 100–101
text formatting. *See* formatting text
Text Frame Options dialog box, 110, 150–156, 437
text frames
adding to stories, 164, 165
after path operations, 352
alternate layouts, 110–114
auto-sizing, 110
balancing columns, 151
captions, 465–466
columns and column width, 150–151
Content Conveyor, 493, 496
converting frames to text frames, 39–40, 148, 149
copying and pasting, 163–164, 165
creating, 21, 71, 148–149, 161
creating on master pages, 71
custom baseline grids, 287
deleting linked text frames, 163
dummy text in, 173–175
entering text, 168–175
EPUB and HTML export, 750
first baseline position, 155–156
flowing text, 160–162, 164–167
formatting text in, 250–251
hanging text outside frames, 290
importing text into, 196
including in eBook navigation, 752
inline. *See* inline frames
inset spacing, 152
linking, 160–162, 493
linking stories in alternate layouts, 113
liquid page rules, 106–110
merging stories, 160–161, 162
options, 150–156
order of linked frames, 163
in and out ports, 159–160, 161–162
overset text, 156–157, 160, 162, 163
placing text, 164–167, 166–167
primary text frames, 71, 100–101
reflowing text. *See* reflow
replacing text with imported text, 195
resizing text in, 253–254
resizing to fit text, 156–157
scaling, and point size of type, 36–37
shrinking to fit contents, 167–169
Smart Text Reflow option and, 41
tables in, 395–396
text wrap, 45, 153, 428–432
transformations and, 579, 580
unlinking, 162–163, 164

T

vertical justification settings, 153–154
Text Import Options dialog box, 196, 199–200
Text option, 744
text place icon
creating text frames, 148, 149
importing text, 68, 195
linking text frames, 160
overview, 164, 166–167
text reflow. *See* reflow
Text Size option, 46
text variables
captions, 175, 178, 187–190, 466
compared to autocorrect, 184
conflicting, 180–181
converting instances to text, 182, 183
copying, 180–181
creating, 175–176, 177, 181
customizing, 180, 184–190
deleting, 182
displaying, 176
examples, 184–190
exporting to HTML, 757
importing, 180–181
instances of, 175, 182, 183
loading, 180–181
placeholder text, 184
preset, 177, 178–179
previewing, 181
pronouncing aloud, 184
replacing, 182
updating book numbering with, 533
Text Variables dialog box, 177, 180, 184–185
text wrap
anchored objects, 446–447
eBook support, 753
editing text wrap boundary, 431, 432
ignoring, 153, 431
inverting, 430, 432
layers and, 133, 139
leading and, 45
objects in middle of columns, 44–45
options, 428–432
text frames beneath, 45, 133
Text Wrap panel, 11, 428
Text Wrap Only Affects Text Beneath option, 45, 133
Text Wrap panel, 11, 428
TextWrangler, 671
Theme pop-up menu, 54
third-party tools for metadata, 753
threads, text, 160–163, 496. *See also* linked text frames
Three-D Ribbon path text option, 457
thresholds
clipping paths, 509
grid and guide view thresholds, 47, 121, 122, 126, 128, 131
throwing computers out of windows, 449
Thumbnail view (Library panel), 28
thumbnails. *See also* proxies and proxy images
colors of, 81
exporting PDF files containing, 518
interactive PDF files, 741
Library panel, 28
pages, 80
place cursors, 37
printing, 654
Thumbnails setting, 654
TIFF images
applying colors to, 622–623
bitmap files, 472
display performance settings, 56
importing bitmaps, 478–480
print settings, 662–664
strengths and weaknesses of, 474
tildes (~), 216
Tile setting, 654–655
tiling
printing tiles, 654–655
windows, 7–9
time
text variables, 179, 184
time zones, 179
time machines, 753
time zones, 179
Timing panel, 735, 737
tints
creating, 611, 612
gaps in patterned strokes, 360, 361
halftone screening settings, 660
mixed ink groups, 615–617
mixed ink swatches, 614–617
overview, 606
tint builds, 660
tint swatches, 611, 612, 619
tinting paragraphs, 392–393
title bars, 4, 10
Title option, indexes, 571
Title Page options, 750
title tab, 3
titles of DPS articles, 763
TLF text option, 745
To End of Document option, 565
To End of Section option, 565
To End of Story option, 565
To Next Style Change option, 564
To Next Use Of Style option, 564
To Path options, path text, 459, 460
tolerances for clipping paths, 509
Tool Hints panel, 19
tools, 18, 19. *See also* Tools panel
Tools panel, 3
changing layout, 38
display arrangements, 38
grand tour of, 17–27
hidden tools, 18
keyboard shortcuts, 18
preferences settings, 38
shortcuts, 11
tooltips, 37, 52, 726, 732
Top vertical justification method, 153
torus shapes, 347
Track Changes panel, 209–210, 211
Track Changes preferences, 53–54
tracking (spacing). *See also* kerning
highlighting custom tracking, 44
multi-line composition, 297–299
overview, 260–262
range kerning, 257, 260
removing, 258
tips and tricks, 261–262
tracking changes, 53–54, 198, 209–210, 211
trademark symbols, 263
Transform Again commands, 593–596
Transform Content option, 578
Transform panel. *See also* transformations
basic techniques, 576–583
math anxiety and, 580–581
moving with, 584
Proxy, 576, 577, 581
rotating with, 590

scaling with, 587
shearing with, 592–593
Transform Sequence Again commands, 594
transformations. *See also* Transform panel
aligning objects, 597–598
aligning objects to Key objects, 597
basic techniques, 576–583
buttons for, 582
centers of, 576, 577, 581
distributing objects, 598–601
duplicating while transforming, 581, 582
frames without contents, 577–578
Free Transform tool, 17, 18, 24, 585, 587, 589
hiding objects, 602
lines and line segments, 576–577
locking object positions, 601
moving objects, 583–585
multiple objects, 579, 580
panel angles and percentages, 583
path or frame contents, 577–578, 583
points, 576–577, 578
preventing transformation, 601
Proxy, selecting points on, 581
reflecting objects, 591
repeating transformations, 593–596
rotating objects, 23, 588–591
scaling objects, 23, 579, 580, 586–588
Selection tool, 587
shearing objects, 592–593
Smart Dimensions, 129
text frames and, 579, 580
transformation tools, 17
Transformations Are Totals option, 583
transitions
exporting to Flash files, 745
page transitions, 711, 739, 742
playing media on page load, 731, 732
transparency. *See also* flattener
Acrobat Reader and, 517
Adobe PDF Print Engine and, 374
AI files, 482–483
alpha channels in graphics, 479
animated objects, 735
applying, 374–375
audio or video frames, 733
background and foreground colors and, 374, 375, 482–483
blending modes, 375–377, 380
choosing file formats and, 475
clipping paths and, 508
compared to Photoshop, 374
compromise and, 679
displaying on screen, 57, 477
drop shadows and, 380
eBook images, 754
Effects panel, 11, 374, 375, 377
EPS graphics and, 515
exporting graphics with, 515, 526
Flash files, 745
importing files with, 482–483
InDesign's management of, 372–374
indicator, 79
Isolate Blending option, 377
Knockout Group option, 377–378
PDF files and, 482–483, 526
PNG files, 511, 512
PostScript support for, 677–678
previewing settings, 684–685
printing transparent objects, 373–374
removing, 388
SWF files, 744
Transparency slider, 57
tricks and guidelines, 679–680
vector graphics and, 678
Transparency Blend Space setting, 374, 680
Transparency Flattener Presets Options dialog box, 681–683
Transparency Flattener settings, 373, 515, 667–668
Transparency panel. *See* Effects panel; transparency
Transparency slider, 57
Transparent Background option, 482–483
Transverse setting, 652
trapping
overview, 626–627
previewing, 677
Print dialog box settings, 659
Trapping pop-up menu, 659
tri-fold brochures, 672–673
triangles
converting objects to triangles, 354
in ports and out ports, 160
in tool icons, 18
yellow triangle icon, 485
triggering
animation, 734
hidden buttons, 724
trims, cropping PDF files to, 482
Triple Click to Select a Line option, 40, 204
troubleshooting
Android device display, 765
Apple device display, 765
booklet imposition, 674
books, 549
caption metadata, 466
compressed PPDs, 647
converting bullets or numbers to paths, 434
converting text to paths, 434
corrupt data, removing from files, 532
deleting color swatches, 532
deleting index markers, 561
downloading fonts, 665
dragging causes slowdown, 39
embedding fonts, 514
external CSS styles, 760
finding transparent elements, 684
flexible columns and auto-size text frames, 110, 157
fuzzy graphics, 476
graphics in EPUB/HTML export, 749
imported media files, 729, 730
inline frame limitations, 436
leading, 255–256
lurking errant fonts, 275–276
Mac keyboard shortcuts, 409n
master page items and layer items, 141–142
moving Control panel, 14
moving Tabs panel, 14
numbering order, 312
out of space in table cells, 398
page transitions don't appear, 739

paragraph rules and screen redraw, 393
placing Word files, 199
preferences settings change back, 35–36
recovery data, 59–60, 77
relinked graphics, 61
replacing special characters, 229–230
resizing linked objects, 494
selecting objects, 117
streaming audio, 731
style groups, 330–331
style names in weird order, 316
styles not automatically applied, 318
synchronization, 551–552
text entry and keyboard shortcuts, 2
transparency and printing, 679–680
unnamed colors, 606–607
variables in running headers, 186, 187
VBScripts, 696–697
TrueType fonts, 253, 691
Trumatch swatch books and library, 630
TT symbol in font names, 253
tuchus, pains in the, 615
turkeys, etiquette and, 627
turning pages
curled page effect, 743
jumping to pages, 67
Page field and buttons, 5
Pages panel, 82
PDF/SWF page transitions, 732
Twilight Zone of page layout, 389
twisty triangle icon, 486
Twitter, 756, 765
two-position rollovers, 724
two-sided printing, 675
two-state buttons, 722–723
TXT files, 533
type. *See* text
Type 1 fonts, 691
type on a path. *See* path text
Type on a Path Options dialog box, 456–460
Type pop-up menu, 656
Type Preferences dialog box, 39–41
Type Style menu, 252–253
type styles, 251–253. *See also* font families and fonts
Type tool, 18
converting frames, 39–40, 148, 149
creating frames, 148, 149
creating notes, 211
entering text, 148, 168–169
overview, 17, 21
Type Tool Converts Frames to Text Frames option, 39–40
typefaces. *See* font families and fonts
typesetting systems
desktop publishing transition, 249–250
Ole's late night stories about, 249
tagged text and, 244–245
typesetting tags. *See* tagged text and documents
Typical Display setting, 55, 477
typing. *See* entering text
typographer's quotes, 39–40, 197, 201
typography. *See* text

U

u symbol, 173
 tags, 752
Ultimate Impostrip, 671
un-underlining spaces, 266
unanchoring anchored objects, 441
uncapitalized words or sentences, 51
uncoated papers, 629, 636
uncompiled AppleScripts, 696
uncontrollable sobbing over resizing text frames, 110
Underline Options dialog box, 267, 268
underlines, 266–267
unequal-width columns, 122, 123
unformatted tables or text, 197
ungrouping
EPUB export and, 750
objects, 143
Unicode, 27, 173, 235, 242, 247
unique identifiers, eBooks, 754
United States Rehabilitation Act, 530
Units & Increments Preferences dialog box, 6, 45–47, 253, 585
units of measurement. *See* measurements
Unlink icon, 162
unlinking
linked objects, 494
text frames, 162–163, 164
Unlock All Layers command, 137
unlocking
column guides, 122
guide positions, 128
item positions, 601
layers, 137
ruler guides, 128
zero point, 7
Unmerge Cells command, 410
unnamed colors, 604–606, 609, 619
unnamed hyperlinks, 711–712
unordered lists <ul>, 752, 754, 758
unplaced items, removing, 471
unplaced text. *See* overset text
unsaved documents, 4
unused index topics, hiding, 569
unused layers, deleting, 140
unused styles in imported files, 198
unzipping eBooks, 753
unzipping panels to full view, 10
Update All Numbers command, 533
Update Chapter & Paragraph Numbers command, 533
Update Content in Data Fields, 540
Update Data Source command, 540
Update Graphic Links in Package option, 690–691
Update Table of Contents command, 559
updater, DPS Desktop Tools, 761
updating
chapter numbers, 533
graphic links in packages, 690–691
graphics, 61, 486–487
hyperlinks, 717
imported text, 203
indexes, 572
linked files, 203, 486–487
linked objects, 494
linking to new files, 487–488

merged data, 540
numbering, 533
object styles, 449
renumbering pages in books, 546, 548, 549, 552–553
tables of contents, 559
uploading folios, 761, 762
uppercase characters, 239, 261. *See also* case of characters
URLs. *See also* Web sites
button actions for displaying, 720
collecting form data, 722
converting to hyperlinks, 713
creating hyperlinks from, 716
HTML images, 759
http or rtmp, 731
hyperlink destinations, 713–715, 716
linking to videos on Web sites, 731
loading media files from, 731
named and unnamed hyperlinks, 711–712
U.S. Rehabilitation Act, 530
U.S. Web Coated or Uncoated setting, 633
U.S. Web Coated profile, 631, 633, 641
U.S. Web Coated SWOP setting, 631
Use Black Point Compensation setting, 636
"Use Cruddy Preview" option, 481
Use Custom Baseline Grid option, 287
Use Document Hyphenation Exceptions Only option, 691
Use Document Profile option, 638
Use Embedded Profile option, 689
Use Global Light checkbox, 381
Use Inline Input for Non-Latin text option, 42
Use option (text variables), 178
Use PDF's Layer Visibility option, 507
Use Photoshop's Layer Visibility option, 507
Use Photoshop's/PDF's Layer Visibility option, 507
Use pop-up menu (text variables), 186
Use Spacing field, 598
Use Structure for Tab Order option, 743
Use TIFF or PICT Preview option, 481
Use Typographer's Quotes option, 39–40, 197, 201
User command, 211
user dictionary, 49–51, 215–217
User Dictionary preferences settings, 49–51
user interfaces, adding with scripts, 707–708
User Password setting (Document Open Password setting), 527
Utah, 62

V

V shapes, 354
vaguely offensive time zone indications, 179
value attributes, ordered lists and, 758
variables. *See* text variables
VB (Visual Basic), 696
VB5 CCE (Visual Basic 5 Control Creation Edition), 696
VBA (Visual Basic for Applications), 696
VB.NET, 696
VBS files, 697
VBScript, 696–697
vector graphics
color management and, 628
display options, 56
EPUB and HTML export, 750
graphic file formats, 472, 473
greeking while moving, 39
limitations of, 473
previewing flattening, 684–685
rasterizing, 678, 681–682, 683, 748
transparency and, 678
Vector Graphics slider, 56
vendors, dictionaries, 50
versions of files. *See also* InCopy
creating with conditional text, 223
Links panel information, 491
verso pages, 71, 553
vertical axis
reflecting objects, 591
slanting type, 263, 264
vertical depth display, 209
vertical folio layouts, 762
vertical justification settings, 153–154
vertical liquid guides, 107–108
Vertical Margins field, 49
vertical orientation, 112, 652, 762
vertical ruler and guides, 3, 45, 107–108
vertical scaling, 262, 586, 587
Vertical Scaling field, 586, 587
vertical scroll bar, 3
vertically distributing objects, 598–601
Video action, 721
video files
compressing in folios, 764
converting to importable formats, 729
displaying with button actions, 721
DPS publications, 763, 765
eBooks and, 752
exporting interactive documents, 743
exporting to Flash files, 745
exporting to HTML, 757
floating windows, 732
importing and playing, 729–733
interactive file support, 711
linking to Web site videos, 731
navigation points, 732
options for playing, 731–732
in PDF files, 520, 710
previewing, 740–741
streaming video, 731
tooltips, 732
Video action, 721
View and Layout option, 742
View menu shortcuts, 63
View Options pop-up menu, 4
View PDF after Exporting option, 519
View settings (Excel), 201
view thresholds
grids, 47, 131
guides, 121, 122, 126, 128
View Zoom action, 722
viewer apps, single-issue, 762
viewing options
automating in PDF files, 721, 722
Excel views, importing, 201
grid view thresholds, 47, 131

guides view thresholds, 121, 122, 126, 128
rotating page view, 89–90
View menu shortcuts, 63
View Options pop-up menu, 4
vignettes. *See* gradients and gradient fills
Visibility icon, 138
visible spectrum, 604
Visual Basic (VB), 696
Visual Basic 5 Control Creation Edition, 696
Visual Basic for Applications (VBA), 696
Visual Basic .NET, 696
Visual Basic Script, 696–697
visual color perception, 604

W

warnings
linked objects, 494
Preflight warnings, 687–688
Print Booklet warnings, 674
Warnock, John, 677
WAV files, 729
waxers, ancient page layout and, 17
Web authoring tools, 746–747, 749, 753–756, 758–760
Web browsers
browser-safe colors, 632
previewing interactive files in, 740
Web Coated Stock setting, 633
Web Intent documents, 112
Web/Internet option, 632
Web-only files
exporting InDesign pages as XHTML. *See* XHTML files
optimizing PDF files, 518
Web or Digital Publishing Intent setting, 70
web presses, 633
Web-safe colors, 632
Web site resources
acrobat.com servers, 762
Adobe Digital Editions, 753
Adobe EPUB resources, 755
Adobe IDs, 761
AppleScript, 695
Calibre, 755
Digital Publishing Suite, 765–766
eBook resources, 755
epubsecrets.com, 755
example DPS apps, 766
HTML text formatting tricks, 760
InDesign scripting forum, 697
International Color Consortium, 525
Late Night Software, 696
NINAs, 706
printers marks, 671
scripting examples, 704
trapping methods, 627
www.idpf.org, 745
XML information, 544
Web sites. *See also* XHTML files
button actions for displaying, 720
converting URLs to hyperlinks, 713
Digital Publishing Suite, 765–766
document intent settings, 70
exporting HTML, 755–760
HTML text formatting tricks, 760
hyperlinks to, 716
linking to videos, 731
loading media files from, 731
optimizing PDF files, 518
Web-safe colors, 632
weight
page marks, 657
stroke styles, 363
stroke weight, 356–357
Weight pop-up menu, 657
werewolves, 602
When Pasting Text and Tables from Other Applications option, 61
When Scaling options, 36–37
When Updating Link pop-up menu, 507
white space
inserting special characters, 169, 170
showing hidden characters, 205
un-underlining spaces, 266
white text on black background, 261
Whole Word option, 228
widows, preventing, 304–306
width
feathering and, 384
line weight, 356–357
scaling and, 587
Width field, 587
Width option, 384
wildcard characters, 229–230, 236–242
winding, 335, 338
windows
closing, 4, 9
InDesign windows and interface, 2–9
multiple open windows, 7–9
opening, 206
switching, 208
Windows eBook resolution, 754
Windows scripting systems, 696–697
winged pigs, 544
wipes, 739
"With Power Comes Responsibility" speeches, 373, 379
WMF graphics, 472–473
wool, shearing and, 592
Word. *See* Microsoft Word files
word and letter spacing, 44, 260, 301–303
word counts, 27
Word Import Options dialog box, 196–199
word spacing. *See* kerning; tracking
words
adding to dictionary, 215–216, 217
extra spaces between, 41
finding and replacing. *See* finding and replacing
hyphenating, 299–301
indexing, 561
last word hyphenation, 300–301
removing from dictionary, 216–217
single word justification, 303
word and letter spacing, 44, 260
word counts, 27
workgroups, Book panel and, 550
Working CMYK setting, 638
working spaces (color management), 632–633, 636–637, 640
Working Spaces pop-up menus, 632–633
Workspace pop-up menu, 4
workspaces, 4, 34–35

World of Warcraft, 693
World Ready composers, 298
Wrap Around Bounding Box button, 429
Wrap Around Object Shape button, 429
Wrap Around Object text wrap, 430–431
Wrap To options, 431, 432
wrapping text. *See* text wrap
WYSIWYG publishing, tagged text and, 244–245

X

X-Acto knives, ancient page layout and, 17
X and Y fields, Transform and Control panels, 38, 580–581
x height, 155, 257
X Offset and Y Offset settings, 446
x-refs (index), 566–568
X Relative To and Y Relative To settings, 444
X-Rite EyeOne device, 629
XFL files, 710. *See also* Flash and FLA files
XHTML files, 755–760
XML and structured documents. *See also* tagged text and documents
  accessibility tagging, 530
  creating files, 540–541
  creating tags, 540–541
  displaying tag markers, 541, 543
  elements, 541, 542
  exporting motion presets, 738
  exporting tags, 544
  exporting to HTML, 756, 757, 758
  importing, 541, 542
  InDesign Interchange (IDML) format, 74, 75, 532
  InDesign Interchange (INX) format, 532
  InDesign Markup format, 76–77
  loading tags, 540–541
  mapping styles and, 749
  overview, 540–541
  page layout process and, 540–541
  snippets, 532, 541
  Structure view, 541, 542
  tab order in PDF files, 743
  tagged PDF files and, 519
  tagging frames, 541, 543
  tagging text, 541, 543
  tags, 540, 544
  tags not exported to HTML, 757
  Web site information, xi, 544
XML Import Options dialog box, 542
XMP information, displaying, 490
XMP standard, 503
Xoom, 765
Xtensions, converted files and, 75

Y

years, in text variables, 179
yellow highlighting, 43, 304
yellow triangle icon, 485
Yog-Sothoth (elder evil space god), 308
YouTube videos, 765

Z

zero characters, 272
zero point, 3, 6–7, 45, 581
Zero Winding Fill Rule, 348
Zip compression, 474, 522, 523
ZIP files, eBooks in, 753
zipping panels into title bars, 10
Zoom button, 3
Zoom In or Zoom Out command, 63
Zoom tool, 18, 26, 63
zooming in or out
  Application Bar, 5
  controlling with button actions, 722
  defined, 62–65
  Hand tool, 26
  hyperlink jumps to pages and, 714
  Power Zoom shortcut, 64, 65
  shortcuts, 63
  Zoom tool, 18, 26, 63